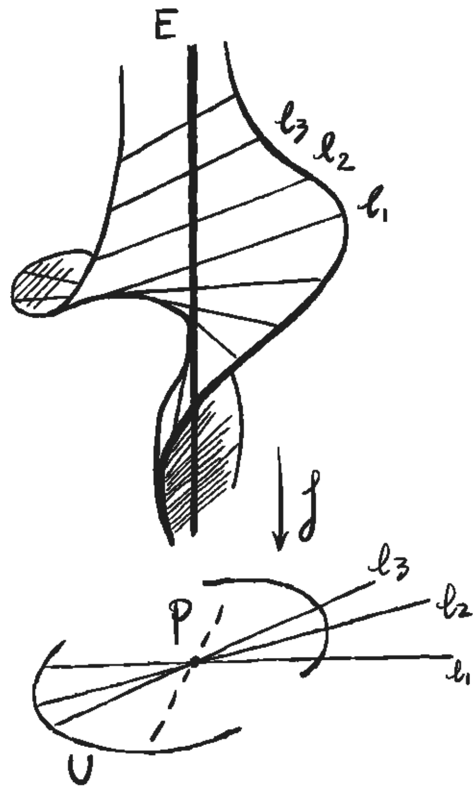
Algebra

Xiaolong Pan

November 14, 2023



Contents

Chapter 1

Category

1.1 Functors

1.1.1 Definition of Functors

Let $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}$ be two categories. A **covariant functor**

$$F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$$

is an assignment of an object $F(A) \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{D})$ for every $A \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and of a function

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B) \to \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(A), F(B))$$

for every pair of objects A, B in $\mathcal{C}$ such that $\forall f \in \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B), g \in \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(B, C)$ we have

$$F(\mathrm{id}_A) = \mathrm{id}_{F_A}, \quad F(g \circ f) = F(g) \circ F(f).$$

Example 1.1.1.1. If R is a ring, we have denoted by $R^\times$ the group of units in R; every ring homomorphism $R \to S$ induces a group homomorphism $R^\times \to S^\times$, and this assignment is compatible with compositions; therefore this operation defines a covariant functor **Ring** $\to$ **Ab**.

1.1.2 Equivalence of Category

The structure of an object in a category is adequately carried by its isomorphism class, and a natural notion of equivalence of categories should aim at matching isomorphism classes, rather than individual objects. The *morphisms* are a more essential piece of information; the quality of a functor is first of all measured on how it acts on morphisms.

Definition 1.1.2.1. Let $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}$ be two categories. Let $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ be a covariant functor.

(a) F is **faithful** if for all objects A, B of $\mathcal{C}$, the induced function

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B) \to \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(A), F(D))$$

is injective.

(b) F is **full** if this function is surjective, for all objects A, B.

(c) F is called essentially surjective if for any object $B \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{B})$ there exists an object $A \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{A})$ such that $F(A)$ is isomorphic to B in $\mathcal{B}$.

Lemma 1.1.2.2. *Let $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ be a fully faithful functor. If A, B are objects in $\mathcal{C}$, then $A \cong B$ in $\mathcal{C}$ if and only if $F(A) \cong F(B)$ in $\mathcal{D}$.*

Proof. Assume F is covariant. Since we have $F(f \circ g) = F(f) \circ G(g)$, if $A \cong B$, we have $F(A) \cong \mathscr{B}$. Conversely, if $F(A) \cong F(B)$, assume f, g are isomorphisms between them with $g = f^{-1}$. Since F is full, there are two morphisms f', g' such that $F(f') = f, F(g') = g$. Then we have

$$F(f' \circ g') = f \circ g = \mathrm{id}, \quad F(g' \circ f') = g \circ f = \mathrm{id}$$

Since $F(\mathrm{id}) = \mathrm{id}$, and F is faithful, we get $f' \circ g' = g' \circ f' = \mathrm{id}$, so $A \cong B$ follows. $\square$

Definition 1.1.2.3. Let $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{D}$ be categories, and let F, G be functors $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$. A **natural transformation** $\nu : F \to G$ is the datum of a morphism $\nu_X : F(X) \to G(X)$ in $\mathcal{D}$ for every object X in $\mathcal{C}$, such that $\forall \alpha : X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{C}$ the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} F(X) \arrow[r, "\nu_X"] \arrow[d, "F(\alpha)"'] & G(X) \arrow[d, "G(\alpha)"] \\ F(Y) \arrow[r, "\nu_Y"] & G(Y) \end{tikzcd}$$

commutes. A **natural isomorphism** is a natural transformation μ such that μ_X is an isomorphism for every X.

A natural transformation is often written as

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathcal{C} \arrow[r, bend left, "F"] \arrow[r, bend right, "G"'] \arrow[r, phantom, "\Downarrow\nu"] & \mathcal{D} \end{tikzcd}$$

In addition, given a morphism of functors $\mu : F \to G$ and a morphism of functors $\nu : \mathscr{E} \to F$ then the composition $\nu \circ \mu$ is defined by the rule

$$(\nu \circ \mu)_X := \nu_X \circ \mu_X.$$

for $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{A})$. It is easy to verify that this is indeed a morphism of functors from $\mathscr{E}$ to G. In this way, given categories $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{B}$ we obtain a new category, namely the category of functors between $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{B}$.

Definition 1.1.2.4. An **equivalence of categories** $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ is a functor such that there exists a functor $G : \mathcal{B} \to \mathcal{A}$ such that the compositions $F \circ G$ and $G \circ F$ are isomorphic to the identity functors $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{B}}$, respectively $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{A}}$. In this case we say that G is a **quasi-inverse** to F.

Proposition 1.1.2.5. *Let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ be a fully faithful functor. Suppose for every $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{B})$ we are given an object $G(X)$ of A and an isomorphism $i_X : X \to F(G(X))$. Then there is a unique functor $G : \mathcal{B} \to \mathcal{A}$ such that G extends the rule on objects, and the isomorphisms i_X define an isomorphism of functors $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{B}} \to F \circ G$. Moreover, G and F are quasi-inverse equivalences of categories.*

Proof. The action of G on objects is defined. For $X, Y \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{B})$ and $f \in \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{B}}(X, Y)$, we have the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, "i_X"] & Y \arrow[d, "i_Y"] \\ F(G(X)) \arrow[r, "i_Y \circ f \circ i_X^{-1}"] & F(G(Y)) \\ G(X) \arrow[u, "F"] \arrow[r, dashed] & G(Y) \arrow[u, "F"'] \end{tikzcd}$$

where the dashed map is induced by the bijection

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y) \cong \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{B}}(F(X), F(Y))$$

by the functoriality, this defines a functor $G : \mathcal{B} \to \mathcal{A}$. Moreover, the upper half of the diagram means i_X define an isomorphism of functors $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{B}} \to F \circ G$.

For $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{A})$, we have an isomorphism $i_{F(X)} : F(X) \to F \circ G \circ F(X)$. Since F is full and faithful, there is an isomorphism $\mu_X : X \to G \circ F(X)$ by Lemma 1.1.2.2. The naturality of μ_X follows from that of $i_{F(X)}$ and the faithfulness of F. Thus μ is an isomorphism $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{A}} \to G \circ F$. □

Corollary 1.1.2.6. *A functor is an equivalence of categories if and only if it is both fully faithful and essentially surjective.*

Proof. Let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ be essentially surjective and fully faithful. As by convention all categories are small and as F is essentially surjective we can, using the axiom of choice, choose for every $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{B})$ an object $G(X)$ of $\mathcal{A}$ and an isomorphism $i_X : X \to F(G(X))$. Then we apply Proposition 1.1.2.5. □

1.1.3 Yoneda's Lemma

Definition 1.1.3.1. Given a category $\mathcal{C}$ the opposite category $\mathcal{C}^{op}$ is the category with the same objects as $\mathcal{C}$ but all morphisms reversed.

Definition 1.1.3.2. Let $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}$ be categories. A contravariant functor F from $\mathcal{A}$ to $\mathcal{B}$ is a functor $\mathcal{A}^{op} \to \mathcal{B}$.

Concretely, a contravariant functor F satisfies the property that, given another morphism $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Y \to Z$, we have

$$F(g \circ f) = F(g) \circ F(f)$$

as morphism from $F(Z)$ to $F(X)$.

Definition 1.1.3.3. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category. A **presheaf of sets on** $\mathcal{C}$ or simply a presheaf is a contravariant functor F from $\mathcal{C}$ to **Set**. The category of presheaves is denoted $\mathbf{Psh}(\mathcal{C})$.

Example 1.1.3.4 (Functor of points). For any $U \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ there is a contravariant functor

$$h_X : \mathcal{C} \to \mathbf{Set}, \quad Y \mapsto \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(Y, X).$$

In other words h_X is a presheaf. We will always denote this presheaf $h_X : \mathcal{C}^{op} \to \mathbf{Set}$. It is called the **representable presheaf** associated to X.

Note that given a morphism $s : X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{C}$ we get a corresponding natural transformation of functors $h(s) : h_X \to h_Y$ defined simply by composing with the morphism $U \to V$. It is trivial to see that this turns composition of morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$ into composition of transformations of functors. In other words we get a functor

$$h : \mathcal{C} \to \mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}^{op}, \mathbf{Set}) =: \widehat{\mathcal{C}}.$$

Lemma 1.1.3.5 (Yoneda lemma). *The functor h is fully faithful. More generally, given any contravariant functor F and any object X of $\mathcal{C}$ we have a natural bijection*

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\widehat{\mathcal{C}}}(h_X, F) \to F(X), \quad \alpha \mapsto \alpha_X(\mathrm{id}_X).$$

Proof. An element $f \in h_X(Y) = \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(Y, X)$ can be viewed as a morphism $f^* : \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, X) \to \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(Y, X)$. Note that $f^*(\mathrm{id}_X) = f$, so if there is a natural transformation $\alpha : h_X \to F$, then from the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, X) \arrow[r, "\alpha_X"] \arrow[d, "f^*"] & F(X) \arrow[d, "F(f)"] \\
\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(Y, X) \arrow[r, "\alpha_X"] & F(Y)
\end{tikzcd}$$

we obtain

$$\alpha_Y(f) = \alpha_Y\big(f^*(\mathrm{id}_X)\big) = F(f)\big(\alpha_X(\mathrm{id}_X)\big).$$

That is, α is simply determined by $\alpha_X(\mathrm{id}_X)$. Conversely, given $\xi \in F(X)$, we can define a natural transformation by the formula above:

$$\beta_Y : h_X(Y) \to F(Y), \quad \beta_Y(f) = F(f)(\xi).$$

It follows that these two map are inverse of each other. □

Definition 1.1.3.6. A contravariant functor $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathbf{Set}$ is said to be **representable** if it is isomorphic to the functor of points h_X for some object X of $\mathcal{C}$.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category and let $F : \mathcal{C}^{op} \to \mathbf{Set}$ be a representable functor. Choose an object X of $\mathcal{C}$ and an isomorphism $\alpha : h_X \to F$. The Yoneda lemma guarantees that the pair (X, α) is unique up to unique isomorphism. The object X is called an object representing F.

1.1.4 Limits and colimits

The various universal properties encountered along the way are all particular cases of the notion of categorical **limit**, which is worth mentioning explicitly. Let $F : I \to C$ be a *covariant functor*, where one thinks of $\mathcal{I}$ as a category of indices. The **limit** of F is an object L of $\mathcal{C}$, endowed with morphisms $\lambda_I : L \to F(I)$ for all objects I of $\mathcal{I}$, satisfying the following properties:

1. If $\alpha : I \to J$ is a morphism in $\mathcal{I}$, then $\lambda_J = F(\alpha) \circ \lambda_I$:

$$\begin{tikzcd} & L \arrow[dl, "\lambda_I"'] \arrow[dr, "\lambda_J"] & \\ F(I) \arrow[rr, "F(\alpha)"'] & & F(J) \end{tikzcd}$$

2. L is final with respect to this property: that is, if M is another object, endowed with morphisms μ_I, also satisfying the previous requirement, then there exists a unique morphism $M \to L$ making all relevant diagrams commute

Example 1.1.4.1 (Products). Let $\mathcal{I}$ be the discrete category consisting of two objects $\mathbf{1}$, $\mathbf{2}$, with only identity morphisms, and let $\mathscr{A}$ be a functor from $\mathcal{I}$ to any category $\mathcal{C}$; let $A_1 = \mathscr{A}(\mathbf{1})$, $A_2 = \mathscr{A}(\mathbf{2})$ be the two objects of $\mathcal{C}$ indexed by $\mathcal{I}$. Then $\varprojlim \mathscr{A}$ is nothing but the product of A_1 and A_2 in $\mathcal{C}$: a limit exists if and only if a product of A_1 and A_2 exists in $\mathcal{C}$.

We can similarly define the product of any (possibly infinite) family of objects in a category as the limit over the corresponding discrete indexing category, provided of course that this limit exists.

The limit notion is a little more interesting if the indexing category $\mathcal{I}$ carries more structure.

Example 1.1.4.2 (Equalizers and kernels). Let $\mathcal{I}$ again be a category with two objects $\mathbf{1}$, $\mathbf{2}$, but assume that morphisms look like this:

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathbf{1} \arrow[loop left] \arrow[r, bend left, "\alpha"] \arrow[r, bend right, "\beta"'] & \mathbf{2} \arrow[loop right] \end{tikzcd}$$

That is, add to the discrete category two parallel morphisms α, β from one of the objects to the other. A functor $\mathscr{K} : \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{C}$ amounts to the choice of two objects A_1, A_2 in $\mathcal{C}$ and two parallel morphisms between them. Limits of such functors are called **equalizers**. For a concrete example, assume $\mathcal{C} = R$-**Mod** is the category of R-modules for some ring R; let $\varphi : A_2 \to A_1$ be a homomorphism, and choose $\mathscr{K}$ as above, with $\mathscr{K}(\alpha) = \varphi$ and $\mathscr{K}(\beta) =$ the zero-morphism. Then $\varprojlim \mathscr{K}$ is nothing but the kernel of φ.

Example 1.1.4.3 (Limits over chains). In another typical situation, $\mathcal{I}$ may consist of a totally ordered set, for example:

$$\cdots \longrightarrow \mathbf{4} \longrightarrow \mathbf{3} \longrightarrow \mathbf{2} \longrightarrow \mathbf{1}$$

(that is, the objects are $\boldsymbol{i}$, for all positive integers i, and there is a unique morphism $\boldsymbol{i} \to \boldsymbol{j}$ whenever $i \geq j$; we are only drawing the morphisms $\boldsymbol{j} + \mathbf{1} \to \boldsymbol{j}$). Choosing $F : \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{C}$ is equivalent to choosing objects A_i of $\mathcal{C}$ for all positive integers i and morphisms $\varphi_{ji} : A_i \to A_j$ for all $i \geq j$, with the requirement that $\varphi_{ii} = 1_{A_i}$, and $\varphi_{kj} \circ \varphi_{ji} = \varphi_{ki}$ for all $i \geq j \geq k$. That is, the choice of F amounts to the choice of a diagram

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{\varphi_{45}} A_4 \xrightarrow{\varphi_{34}} A_3 \xrightarrow{\varphi_{23}} A_2 \xrightarrow{\varphi_{12}} A_1$$

in $\mathcal{C}$. An inverse limit $\varprojlim F$ (which may also be denoted $\varprojlim_i A_i$, when the morphisms φ_{ji} are evident from the context) is then an object A endowed with morphisms $\varphi_i : A \to A_i$ such that the whole diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} & & & A \arrow[dlll, dashed, "\cdots"'] \arrow[dll, "\varphi_4"'] \arrow[d, "\varphi_3"] \arrow[dr, "\varphi_2"] \arrow[drr, "\varphi_1"] & & \\ \cdots \arrow[r, "\varphi_{45}"] & A_4 \arrow[rr, "\varphi_{34}"] & & A_3 \arrow[r, "\varphi_{23}"] & A_2 \arrow[r, "\varphi_{12}"] & A_1 \end{tikzcd}$$

commutes and such that any other object satisfying this requirement factors uniquely through A.

Such limits exist in many standard situations. For example, let $C = R$-**Mod** be the category of left-modules over a fixed ring R, and let A_i, φ_{ji} be as above.

Proposition 1.1.4.4. *The limit* $\varprojlim_i A_i$ *exists in* R-**Mod**.

Proof. The product $\prod_i A_i$ consists of arbitrary sequences $(a_i)_{i>0}$ of elements $a_i \in A_i$. Say that a sequence $(a_i)_{i>0}$ is *coherent* if for all $i > 0$ we have $a_i = \varphi_{i,i+1}(a_{i+1})$. Coherent sequences form an R-submodule A of $\prod_i A_i$; the canonical projections restrict to R-module homomorphisms $\varphi_i : A \to A_i$. The reader will check that A is a limit $\varprojlim_i A_i$. ☐

This example easily generalizes to families indexed by more general posets.

The dual notion to limit is the **colimit** of a functor $F : \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{C}$. The colimit is an object C of $\mathcal{C}$, endowed with morphisms $\gamma_I : F(I) \to \mathcal{C}$ for all objects I of $\mathcal{I}$, such that $\gamma_I = \gamma_J \circ F(\alpha)$ for all $\alpha : I \to J$ and that C is *initial* with respect to this requirement.

Example 1.1.4.5. For a typical situation consider again the case of a totally ordered set $\mathcal{I}$, for example:

$$\mathbf{1} \longrightarrow \mathbf{2} \longrightarrow \mathbf{3} \longrightarrow \mathbf{4} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

A functor $F : \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{C}$ consists of the choice of objects and morphisms

$$A_1 \xrightarrow{\psi_{12}} A_2 \xrightarrow{\psi_{23}} A_3 \xrightarrow{\psi_{34}} A_4 \xrightarrow{\psi_{45}} \cdots$$

and the direct limit $\varinjlim_i A_i$ will be an object A with morphisms $\psi_i : A_i \to A$ such that the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
A_1 \arrow[r, "\psi_{12}"] \arrow[drr, "\psi_1"'] & A_2 \arrow[r, "\psi_{23}"] \arrow[dr, "\psi_2"] & A_3 \arrow[r, "\psi_{34}"] \arrow[d, "\psi_3"] & A_4 \arrow[r, "\psi_{45}"] \arrow[dl, "\psi_4"'] & \cdots \arrow[dll, dashed, "\cdots"'] \\
 & & A & &
\end{tikzcd}$$

commutes and such that A is initial with respect to this requirement.

Example 1.1.4.6. If $\mathcal{C} =$ **Set** and all the ψ_{ij} are injective, we are talking about a nested sequence of sets:

$$A_1 \subseteq A_2 \subseteq A_3 \subseteq \cdots$$

the direct limit of this sequence would be the infinite union $\bigcup_i A_i$.

1.1.5 Exact functors

Definition 1.1.5.1. Let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ be a functor

(a) Suppose all finite limits exist in $\mathcal{A}$. We say F is **left exact** if it commutes with all finite limits.

(b) Suppose all finite colimits exist in $\mathcal{A}$. We say F is **right exact** if it commutes with all finite colimits.

(c) We say F is **exact** if it is both left and right exact.

Proposition 1.1.5.2. *Let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ be a functor. Suppose all finite limits exist in $\mathcal{A}$. The following are equivalent:*

(a) *F is left exact,*

(b) *F commutes with finite products and equalizers.*

(c) *F transforms a final object of $\mathcal{A}$ into a final object of $\mathcal{B}$, and commutes with fibre products.*

1.1.6 Adjunction

Definition 1.1.6.1. Let $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}$ be categories, and let $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$, $G : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{C}$ be functors. We say that F and G are **adjoint** (and we say that G is right-adjoint to F and F is left-adjoint to G) if there are natural isomorphisms

$$\tau_{XY} : \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, G(Y)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), Y)$$

for all objects X of $\mathcal{C}$ and Y of $\mathcal{D}$. More precisely, there should be a natural isomorphism of bifunctors

$$\mathcal{C}^{op} \times \mathcal{D} \to \mathbf{Set} : \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(-, G(-)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(-), -)$$

Proposition 1.1.6.2. *For each Y there is a map $\eta_Y : FG(Y) \to Y$ so that for any for any $f : X \to G(Y)$, the corresponding map $\tau_{XY}(f) : F(X) \to Y$ is given by the composition*

$$F(X) \xrightarrow{F(f)} FG(Y) \xrightarrow{\eta_Y} Y$$

Similarly, there is a map $\theta_X : X \to GF(X)$ for each X so that $g : F(X) \to Y$, the corresponding $\tau^{-1}_{XY}(g) : X \to G(Y)$ is given by the composition

$$X \xrightarrow{\theta_X} GF(Y) \xrightarrow{G(g)} G(Y)$$

So the information of τ_{XY} is the same as these two maps.

Proof. We deal with the first case. Let $f : X \to G(Y)$ be a map, consider the follwing diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, G(Y)) \arrow[r, "\tau_{XY}"] & \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), Y) \\
\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(G(Y), G(Y)) \arrow[u, "f^*"] \arrow[r, "\tau_{G(Y)Y}"] & \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(FG(Y), Y) \arrow[u, "F(f)^*"']
\end{tikzcd}$$

Set η_Y to be the image of $\mathrm{id}_{G(Y)}$ under $\tau_{G(Y)Y}$ we get the claim. The second can be done similarly. □

Proposition 1.1.6.3. *Let F be a left adjoint to G. Then*

(a) *F is fully faithful if and only if $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \cong G \circ F$.*

(b) *G is fully faithful if and only if $F \circ G \cong \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$.*

Proof. Assume F is fully faithful. We have to show the adjunction map $X \to G \circ F(X)$ is an isomorphism. Let $X' \to G \circ F(X)$ be any morphism. By adjointness this corresponds to a morphism $F(X') \to F(X)$. By fully faithfulness of F this corresponds to a morphism $X' \to X$. Thus we see that $X \mapsto F \circ G(X)$ defines a bijection

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(X', X) \to \mathrm{Mor}(X', GF(X))$$

Hence it is an isomorphism. Conversely, if $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \cong G \circ F$ then F has to be fully faithful, as G defines an left-inverse on morphism sets. The other case is the dual part. □

Proposition 1.1.6.4. *Let $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ be a functor between categories. If for each $Y \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{D})$ the functor $\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(-), Y)$ is representable, then F has a right adjoint.*

Proof. For each Y we choose an object $G(Y)$ and an isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(-, G(Y)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(-), Y)$$

of functors. By Yoneda's lemma for any morphism $g : Y \to Y'$ the transformation of functors

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(-, G(Y)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(-), Y) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(-), Y') \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(-, G(Y'))$$

corresponds to a unique morphism $G(g) : G(Y) \to G(Y')$. The functoriality of G comes from that of F. □

Example 1.1.6.5. The construction of the free group on a given set is concocted so that giving a set-function from a set A to a group G is the same as giving a group homomorphism from $F(A)$ to G. What this really means is that for all sets A and all groups G there are natural identifications

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathbf{Set}}(A, S(G)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathbf{Grp}}(F(A), G)$$

where $S(G)$ forgets the group structure of G. That is, the functor $F : \mathbf{Set} \to \mathbf{Grp}$ constructing free groups is left-adjoint to the forgetful functor $S : \mathbf{Grp} \to \mathbf{Set}$. This of course applies to every other construction of free objects we have encountered: the free functor is, as a rule, left-adjoint to the forgetful functor.

In fact, the very fact that a functor has an adjoint will endow that functor with convenient features. We say that F is a **left-adjoint functor** if it has a right adjoint, and that G is a **right-adjoint functor** if it has a left-adjoint.

Theorem 1.1.6.6. *Let F be a left adjoint to G.*

(a) *Suppose that $\mathscr{A} : \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{C}$ is a diagram, and suppose that $\varprojlim \mathscr{A}$ exists in $\mathcal{C}$. Then*

$$G(\varprojlim \mathscr{A}) = \varprojlim (G \circ \mathscr{A})$$

In other words, G commutes with limits.

(b) *Suppose that $\mathscr{A} : \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{C}$ is a diagram, and suppose that $\varinjlim \mathscr{A}$ exists in $\mathcal{C}$. Then*

$$F(\varinjlim \mathscr{A}) = \varinjlim (F \circ \mathscr{A})$$

In other words, F commutes with colimits.

Proof. A morphism from a colimit into an object is the same as a compatible system of morphisms from the constituents of the limit into the object, so

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{C}}(X, G(\varprojlim \mathscr{A})) \cong \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), \varprojlim \mathscr{A}) = \varprojlim \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(F(X), \mathscr{A}_i) = \varprojlim \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{D}}(X, G(\mathscr{A}_i))$$

proves that $G(\varprojlim \mathscr{A})$ is the limit we are looking for. A similar argument works for the other statement. □

Corollary 1.1.6.7. *Let F be a left adjoint to G.*

(a) *If $\mathcal{C}$ has finite colimits, then F is right exact.*

(b) *If $\mathcal{D}$ has finite limits, then G is right exact.*

1.1.7 Exercise

Exercise 1.1.1. Let $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ be a covariant functor, and assume that both $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ have products. Prove that for all objects A, B of $\mathcal{C}$, there is a unique morphism $F(A \times B) \to F(A) \times F(B)$ such that the relevant diagram involving natural projections commutes.

If $\mathcal{D}$ has coproducts (denoted $\amalg$) and $G : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ is contravariant, prove that there is a unique morphism $G(A) \amalg G(B) \to G(A \times B)$ (again, such that an appropriate diagram commutes).

Proof. Apply the functor F yields:

$$\begin{tikzcd} & A \times B \arrow[dl] \arrow[dr] & & & F(A \times B) \arrow[dl] \arrow[dr] & \\ A & & B \arrow[r, phantom, "\overset{F}{\Longrightarrow}"] & F(A) & & F(B) \end{tikzcd}$$

by the universal property of $F(A) \times F(B)$, there is a unique morphism:

$$F(A \times B) \xrightarrow{\exists!} F(A) \times F(B)$$

Similar for coproducts:

$$\begin{tikzcd} & A \times B \arrow[dl] \arrow[dr] & & & & G(A \times B) & \\ A & & B \arrow[r, phantom, "\overset{G}{\Longrightarrow}"] & G(A) \arrow[urr] & & & G(B) \arrow[ul] \end{tikzcd}$$

By the universal property of $G(A) \amalg G(B)$, we get

$$G(A) \amalg G(B) \to G(A \times B)$$

$\square$

Exercise 1.1.2. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a small category. Prove that $\mathcal{C}$ is equivalent to the subcategory of representable functors in $\mathbf{Set}^{\mathcal{C}^\circ}$. Thus, every (*small*) category is equivalent to a subcategory of a functor category.

Proof. For $\varphi : A \to B$, there is an induced natural transformation:

$$\varphi : \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(-, A) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(-, B)$$

from Yoneda lemma, there is a bijection from $\mathrm{Hom}(h_A, h_B)$ to $h_B(A) = \mathrm{Hom}(A, B)$. So h is a fully faithful covariant functor. For any representable F, there is a functor h_X and a natural isomorphism $F \cong h_X$. This shows h is a equivalence of categories. $\square$

Exercise 1.1.3. Let R be a commutative ring, and let $I \subseteq R$ be an ideal. Note that $I^n \subseteq I^m$ if $n \geq m$, and hence we have natural homomorphisms $\varphi_{mn} : R/I^n \to R/I^m$ for $n \geq m$.

1. Prove that the inverse limit $\widehat{R}_I := \varprojlim_n R/I^n$ exists as a commutative ring. This is called the I-adic completion of R.

2. By the universal property of inverse limits, there is a unique homomorphism $R \to \widehat{R}_I$. Prove that the kernel of this homomorphism is $\bigcap_n I^n$.

3. Let $I = (x)$ in $R[x]$. Prove that the completion $\widehat{R[x]}_I$ is isomorphic to the power series ring $R[[x]]$.

Proof. We first prove that limit exists in **Ring**. Let $\mathcal{I}$ be a poset $(\mathcal{I}, \leq)$. Choose $\{R_i\}_{i \in \mathcal{I}}$ and $\{\varphi_{ij} : R_i \to R_j\}$ such that

$$i \geq j \geq k \Rightarrow \varphi_{jk} \circ \varphi_{ij} = \varphi_{ik}$$

A sequence $(r_i)_{i \in \mathcal{I}}$ is coherent if $\varphi_{ij}(r_i) = r_j$. Define the limit $\varprojlim_i R_i$ to be

$$\varprojlim_i R_i := \{(r_i)_{i \in \mathcal{I}} \mid (r_i) \text{ is coherent}\}.$$

Since $I^n \subseteq I^m$ for $n \geq m$, there is a well defined quotient homomorphism:

$$\varphi_{nm} : R/I^n \to R/I^m, \quad a + I^n \mapsto a + I^m$$

So the limit $\varprojlim_i R/I^n$ is well defined.

For the homomorphism $\psi_n : R \to R/I^n$, it is clear that

$$\varphi_{nm} \circ \psi_n = \psi_m$$

so we get the unique homomorphsim $\psi : R \to \widehat{R}_I$, defined by $\psi(r) = (\psi_i(r))_{i \in \mathcal{I}}$. It follows that

$$\psi(r) = 0 \iff \psi_i(r) = 0 \iff r \in \bigcap_n I^n.$$

Finally, if $I = (x)$, then $i^n = (x^n)$. So

$$\widehat{R[x]}_I = \{(r_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} : \deg r_i < i, r_i = r_{i-1} + a_{i-1}x^{i-1}\}$$

this set equals $R[[x]]$. $\square$

Exercise 1.1.4. An important example of the construction presented in Exercise 1.1.3 is the ring $\mathbb{Z}_p$ of p-adic integers: this is the limit $\varprojlim_r \mathbb{Z}/p^r\mathbb{Z}$, for a positive prime integer p.

The field of fractions of $\mathbb{Z}_p$ is denoted $\mathbb{Q}_p$; elements of $\mathbb{Q}_p$ are called **p-adic numbers**.

1. Show that giving a p-adic integer A is equivalent to giving a sequence of integers $A_r, r \geq 1$, such that $0 \leq A_r < p^r$, and that $A_s \equiv A_r \bmod p^s$ if $s \leq r$.
2. Equivalently, show that every p-adic integer has a unique infinite expansion $A = a_0 + a_1 \cdot p + a_2 \cdot p^2 + a_3 \cdot p^3 + \cdots$, where $0 \leq a_i \leq p - 1$. The arithmetic of p-adic integers may be carried out with these expansions in precisely the same way as ordinary arithmetic is carried out with ordinary decimal expansions.
3. With notation as in the previous point, prove that $A \in \mathbb{Z}_p$ is invertible if and only if $a_0 \neq 0$.
4. Prove that $\mathbb{Z}_p$ is a local domain, with maximal ideal generated by (the image in $\mathbb{Z}_p$ of) p.
5. Prove that $\mathbb{Z}_p$ is a DVR. (There is an evident valuation on $\mathbb{Q}_p$.)

Proof. Every A_r is in $\mathbb{Z}/p^r\mathbb{Z}$, so $0 \leq A_r < p^r$. From the construction, $A_s + p^s = \varphi_{rs}(A_r + p^r) = A_r + p^s$ for $s \leq r$, we see that $A_r \equiv A_s \bmod p^s$ if $s \leq r$.

Similar to the example $R[[x]]$. Giving a sequence is the same as giving a truncation of a series. And the third point is the same as series $R[[x]]$. From the previous point, we find that $\mathbb{Z}_p/p\mathbb{Z}_p$ is a field, so $p\mathbb{Z}_p$ is a maximal ideal.

Define a function $v_p(x) := \sup\{n : x \in p^n\mathbb{Z}_p\} = \inf\{n : x_n \neq 0\}$. Then for any ideal $I \subseteq \mathbb{Z}_p$, let $n := \min\{v_p(x) : x \in I\}$, then $I \subseteq p^n\mathbb{Z}_p$. Now let $y = p^n x \in I$, then x is invertible, so $(p^n x) = p^n\mathbb{Z}_p \subseteq I$. This shows every ideal in $\mathbb{Z}_p$ has the form $p^n\mathbb{Z}_p$, and $p\mathbb{Z}_p$ is the unique maximal ideal. □

Exercise 1.1.5. If m, n are positive integers and $m \mid n$, then $(n) \subseteq (m)$, and there is an onto ring homomorphism $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} \twoheadrightarrow \mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$. The limit ring $\varprojlim \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ exists and is denoted by $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}$. Prove that $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}} = \mathrm{End}_{\mathbf{Ab}}(\mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z})$.

Proof. Every $f \in \mathrm{End}_{\mathbf{Ab}}(\mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z})$ is uniquely determined by $f(\frac{1}{n})$. Since $n \cdot f(\frac{1}{n}) = f(1) = f(0) = 0$, $f(\frac{1}{n}) = \frac{g(n)}{n}$ for some integer $g(n)$. Since we are deal with $\mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z}$, we may choose $0 \leq g(n) < n$.

For $m \mid n$, we have $n = am$, so

$$f(\frac{1}{n}) = f(\frac{1}{am}) = \frac{g(n)}{am}, \quad f(\frac{1}{m}) = \frac{g(m)}{m}$$

and

$$a \cdot f(\frac{1}{n}) = \frac{g(n)}{m} = f(\frac{1}{m}) = \frac{g(m)}{m}$$

so we have $g(n) \equiv g(n) \bmod m$. This means the sequence

$$(f(\frac{1}{n}))_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$$

is an element of $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}$. Conversely, any element in $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}$ uniquely defines an endomorphism of $\mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z}$. So we have $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}} = \mathrm{End}_{\mathbf{Ab}}(\mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z})$. □

Exercise 1.1.6. Let $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}$ be as in Exercise 1.1.5.

1. If R is a commutative ring endowed with homomorphisms $R \to \mathbb{Z}/p^r\mathbb{Z}$ for all primes p and all r, compatible with all projections $\mathbb{Z}/p^r\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}/p^s\mathbb{Z}$ for $s \leq r$, prove that there are ring homomorphisms $R \to \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ for all n, compatible with all projections $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$ for $m \mid n$.
2. Deduce that $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}$ satisfies the universal property for the product of $\mathbb{Z}_p$, as p ranges over all positive prime integers.

It follows that $\prod_p \mathbb{Z}_p \cong \widehat{\mathbb{Z}} \cong \mathrm{End}_{\mathbf{Ab}}(\mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z})$.

Proof. For any $n = p_1^{r_1} \cdots p_i^{r_i}$, $m = p_1^{r'_1} \cdots p_i^{r'_i}$ with $m \mid n$, by Chinese remainder theorem we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\prod_i \mathbb{Z}/p_i^{r_i}\mathbb{Z} \arrow[r, "\sim"] \arrow[d] & \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} \arrow[d] \\
\prod_i \mathbb{Z}/p_i^{r'_i}\mathbb{Z} \arrow[r, "\sim"] & \mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}
\end{tikzcd}$$

so we get the first result.

Note that giving a morphism from R to $\mathbb{Z}_p$ is the same as giving morphisms from R to $\mathbb{Z}/p^r\mathbb{Z}$ fro all r. So if there is a ring R with morphisms to $\mathbb{Z}_p$ for all prime p, then we get morphisms to $\mathbb{Z}/p^r\mathbb{Z}$ for all prime p, all r. From the previous point, there are morphisms $R \to \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ for all n, compatible with all projection $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}m\mathbb{Z}$. From the definition of $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}$, there is a unique morphism from R to $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}$. So $\widehat{\mathbb{Z}}$ satisfies the universal property of $\prod_p \mathbb{Z}_p$. □

Exercise 1.1.7. Let R, S be rings. An additive covariant functor $F : R$-**Mod** $\to S$-**Mod** is **faithfully exact** if

$$F(A) \xrightarrow{F(\varphi)} F(B) \xrightarrow{F(\psi)} F(C)$$

is exact in S-**Mod** if and only if

$$A \xrightarrow{\varphi} B \xrightarrow{\psi} C$$

is exact in R-**Mod**. Prove that an exact functor $F : R$-**Mod** $\to S$-**Mod** is faithfully exact if and only if $F(M) \neq 0$ for every nonzero R-module M, if and only if $F(\varphi) \neq 0$ for every nonzero morphism φ in R-Mod.

Proof.

1. One direction is easy: If F is faithfully exact. Assume $F(M) = 0$, then the sequence $0 \to F(M) \to 0$ is exact, but $0 \to M \to 0$ is not exact unless $M = 0$, so we find $M = 0$. If $F(\varphi) = 0$, then

   $$F(M) \xrightarrow{F(\varphi)} F(N) \xrightarrow{id_{F(N)}} F(N)$$

   is exact, but

   $$M \xrightarrow{\varphi} N \xrightarrow{id_N} N$$

   is exact only if $\varphi = 0$.

2. Then we show that F reflects zero objects if and only if F reflects zero morphisms: If F reflects zero morphisms, assume $F(X) = 0$, then $\mathrm{id}_{F(X)} = 0$, so $\mathrm{id}_X = 0$. But $id_X = 0$ if and only if $X = 0$, so $X = 0$.

   Now assume F reflects zero objects. For $\varphi : A \to B$ such that $F(\varphi) = 0$. Consider the exact sequence:

   $$A \xrightarrow{\varphi} \operatorname{im}\varphi \xrightarrow{\psi} \operatorname{coker}\varphi$$

   since F is exact, we also have a exact sequence

   $$F(A) \xrightarrow{F(\varphi)} F(\operatorname{im}\varphi) \xrightarrow{F(\psi)} F(\operatorname{coker}\varphi)$$

   Note that $F(\varphi) = 0$, so $F(\psi)$ is monic. But $\psi = 0$ so $F(\psi) = 0$, we conclude that $F(\operatorname{im}\varphi) = 0$. This means $\operatorname{im}\varphi = 0$, so we have $\varphi = 0$.

3. Now we show the last direction. Let F reflects zero morphisms, first we show that F reflects monomorphisms and epimorphisms. In deed, suppose

   $$0 \longrightarrow X \longrightarrow Y \longrightarrow Z$$

   is exact; then

   $$0 \longrightarrow F(X) \longrightarrow F(Y) \longrightarrow F(Z)$$

is exact. If $F(Y) \to F(Z)$ is monic, then $F(X) = 0$, so $X = 0$. This shows F reflects monomorphisms, the dual argument shows that F reflects epimorphisms. Now, in an abelian category, f is an isomorphism if and only if f is both monic and epic, so this implies F reflects isomorphisms. Now suppose $X \to Y \to Z$ is given and

$$0 \longrightarrow F(X) \xrightarrow{F(f)} F(Y) \xrightarrow{F(g)} F(Z)$$

is exact. Since $F(X) \to \ker F(g)$ is an isomorphism, and $\ker F(g) = F(\ker g)$, $X \to \ker g$ is also an isomorphism, so $X \to Y \to Z$ is exact.

□

Exercise 1.1.8. Prove that localization is an exact functor.
In fact, prove that localization preserves homology: if

$$M_\bullet : \qquad \cdots \longrightarrow M_{i+1} \xrightarrow{d_{i+1}} M_i \xrightarrow{d_i} M_{i-1} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

is a complex of R-modules and S is a multiplicative subset of R, then the localization of the i-th homology of $M_\bullet$ is the i-th homology $H_i(S^{-1}M_\bullet)$ of the localized complex

$$S^{-1}M_\bullet : \qquad \cdots \longrightarrow S^{-1}M_{i+1} \xrightarrow{S^{-1}d_{i+1}} S^{-1}M_i \xrightarrow{S^{-1}d_i} S^{-1}M_{i-1} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

Proof. Since

$$d_i(\frac{m}{s}) = d(\frac{ms'}{ss'})$$

we have

$$\ker S^{-1}d_i = \{\frac{m}{s} \mid \exists r \in S, rm \in \ker d_i\}, \quad \operatorname{im} S^{-1}d_{i+1} = \{\frac{m}{s} \mid \exists r \in s, rm \in \operatorname{im} d_{i+1}\}$$

Concerning the quotient, first we observet that, in the construction of $S^{-1}H_i(M_\bullet)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a + \operatorname{im} d_{i+1}}{s} = \frac{a' + \operatorname{im} d_{i+1}}{s'} &\iff (\exists r \in S) \quad r[(a + \operatorname{im} d_{i+1})s' - (a' + \operatorname{im} d_{i+1})s] = 0 \text{ in } H_i(M_\bullet) \\ &\iff (\exists r \in S) \quad r(as' - a's) \in \operatorname{im} d_{i+1} \end{aligned}$$

While in the quotient $H_i(S^{-1}M_\bullet)$:

$$\frac{a}{s} + \operatorname{im} S^{-1}d_{i+1} = \frac{a'}{s'} + \operatorname{im} S^{-1}d_{i+1} \iff \frac{a}{s} - \frac{a'}{s'} \in \operatorname{im} S^{-1}d_{i+1} \iff (\exists r \in S)\ r(as' - a's) \in\in d_{i+1}$$

So there is a natural homomorphism:

$$\psi : S^{-1}H_i(M_\bullet) \to H_i(S^{-1}M_\bullet), \quad \frac{a + \operatorname{im} d_{i+1}}{s} \mapsto \frac{a}{s} + \operatorname{im} S^{-1}d_{i+1}$$

this is an isomorphism from the observation above. □

Exercise 1.1.9. Suppose M is a finitely presented R-module and N is an arbitrary R-module. Show the followsing holds

$$S^{-1}\mathrm{Hom}_R(M, N) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{S^{-1}R}(S^{-1}M, S^{-1}N)$$

But note that this does not holds for any module.

Proof. First we have

$$S^{-1}\mathrm{Hom}_R(R, N) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{S^{-1}R}(S^{-1}R, S^{-1}N)$$

for any N. And we have a natural homomorphism

$$S^{-1}\mathrm{Hom}_A(M, N) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{S^{-1}A}(S^{-1}M, S^{-1}N).$$

Consider the diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
0 \arrow[r] & S^{-1}\mathrm{Hom}_R(M,N) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & S^{-1}\mathrm{Hom}_R(R^m,N) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & S^{-1}\mathrm{Hom}_R(R^n,N) \arrow[d] \\
0 \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}_{S^{-1}R}(S^{-1}M,S^{-1}N) \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}_{S^{-1}R}(S^{-1}R^m,S^{-1}N) \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}_{S^{-1}R}(S^{-1}R^n,S^{-1}N)
\end{tikzcd}$$

The right two vertical maps are isomorphisms, so we get the isomorphism.

For $R = N = \mathbb{Z}$, $M = \mathbb{Q}$, $S = \mathbb{Z} - \{0\}$, we have

$$S^{-1}\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathbb{Q},\mathbb{Z}) = S^{-1}\{0\} = 0, \quad \mathrm{Hom}_{S^{-1}\mathbb{Z}}(S^{-1}\mathbb{Q},S^{-1}\mathbb{Z}) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbb{Q}}(\mathbb{Q},\mathbb{Q}) = \mathbb{Q}$$

□

Exercise 1.1.10. Suppose $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ is a covariant functor of abelian categories, and $C^\bullet$ is a complex in $\mathcal{A}$.

(a) If F is right-exact, describe a natural morphism $FH^\bullet \to H^\bullet F$.

(b) If F is right-exact, describe a natural morphism $FH^\bullet \leftarrow H^\bullet F$.

(c) If F is exact, show that the morphisms of (a) and (b) are inverses and thus isomorphisms.

Proof. First we recall that if F is right-exact, then F commutes with cokernels: For we have the following exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow F(C^i) \xrightarrow{F(d^i)} F(C^{i+1}) \longrightarrow F(\operatorname{coker} d^i) \longrightarrow 0$$

which is obtained from the corresponding short exact sequence. Hence

$$F(\operatorname{coker} d^i) \cong \operatorname{coker} F(d^i)$$

(a) Consider the exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \operatorname{im} d^i \longrightarrow C^{i+1} \longrightarrow \operatorname{coker} d^i \longrightarrow 0$$

Applying F on this gives us

$$F \operatorname{im} d^i \longrightarrow F(C^{i+1}) \longrightarrow F \operatorname{coker} d^i \longrightarrow 0$$

Together with the similar sequence in $F(C^\bullet)$ we get a diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
& F \operatorname{im} d^i \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed, "\alpha"] & F(C^{i+1}) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & F \operatorname{coker} d^i \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\cong"] & 0 \\
0 \arrow[r] & \operatorname{im} F(d^i) \arrow[r] & F(C^{i+1}) \arrow[r] & F \operatorname{coker} d^i \arrow[r] & 0
\end{tikzcd}$$

Then we can show there is an induced map $\alpha : F \operatorname{im} d^i \to \operatorname{im} f(d^i)$. Further, by the snake lemma, this induced map α is an epimorphism. Now consider another sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow H^i(C^\bullet) \longrightarrow \operatorname{coker} d^{i-1} \longrightarrow \operatorname{im} d^i \longrightarrow 0$$

Applying F gives

$$FH^i(C^\bullet) \longrightarrow F \operatorname{coker} d^{i-1} \longrightarrow F \operatorname{im} d^i \longrightarrow 0$$

Similarly, with the counterpart in $F(C^\bullet)$, there is a diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
& FH^i(C^\bullet) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed, "\beta"] & F \operatorname{coker} d^{i-1} \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\cong"] & F \operatorname{im} d^i \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\alpha"] & 0 \\
0 \arrow[r] & H^i F(C^\bullet) \arrow[r] & \operatorname{coker} F(d^{i-1}) \arrow[r] & \operatorname{im} F(d^i) \arrow[r] & 0
\end{tikzcd}$$

Together with α, we get our desired map

$$\beta : FH^i(C^\bullet) \to H^i F(C^\bullet)$$

(b) Instead of (a), we may use the sequence for kernels:

$$0 \longrightarrow \ker d^i \longrightarrow C^i \longrightarrow \operatorname{im} d^i \longrightarrow 0$$

and

$$0 \longrightarrow \operatorname{im} d^{i-1} \longrightarrow \ker d^i \longrightarrow H^i(C^\bullet) \longrightarrow 0$$

with the identification

$$\ker F(d^i) \cong F(\ker d^i)$$

(c) With the exactness hypothesis, the map we obtained all becomes isomorphisms.

□

1.2 Presheaves of sets

In this section, we consider the category of presheaves of sets over a category $\mathcal{C}$, and prove some of its properties. In order to avoid set-theoretic issues, we fix once for all a universe $\mathscr{U}$ which has an element with infinite cardinality. A set is said to be **$\mathscr{U}$-small** (or simply **small** if there is no confusion) if it is isomorphic to an element of $\mathscr{U}$. We also use the following terminology: small group, small ring, small category. We often assume that the schemes, topological spaces, sets of indices, with which we work are $\mathscr{U}$-small, or at least have cardinality belonging to $\mathscr{U}$. A category $\mathcal{C}$ is called a **$\mathscr{U}$-category** if for any objects x, y in $\mathcal{C}$, the set $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(x,y)$ is $\mathscr{U}$-small, and is called $\mathscr{U}$-small if the set $\mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{D})$ is also contained in the universe $\mathscr{U}$. For two categories $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{D}$, we denote by $\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{D})$ the category of (covariant) functors from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$. It is then easy to verify the following two conditions:

- If $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ are elements of $\mathscr{U}$ (resp. $\mathscr{U}$-small), then $\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{D})$ is an element of $\mathscr{U}$ (resp. $\mathscr{U}$-small).
- If $\mathcal{C}$ is a $\mathscr{U}$-small category and $\mathcal{D}$ is a $\mathscr{U}$-category, $\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{D})$ is a $\mathscr{U}$-category.

However, note that if $\mathcal{D}$ is a $\mathscr{U}$-small category and $\mathcal{C}$ is a $\mathscr{U}$-category, then $\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{D})$ is not $\mathscr{U}$-small in general. For example, the category $\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{C},\mathscr{U}\text{-}\mathbf{Set})$. It should be noted that $\mathscr{U}$-smallness is really a restrictive condition for categories, and there are many interesting examples where this condition is not satisfied in general.

1.2.1 The category of presheaves of sets

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category. We define the **category of presheaves of sets over $\mathcal{C}$ relative to the universe $\mathscr{U}$** (or, if there is no confusion, the category of presheaves of sets over $\mathcal{C}$) to be the category of contravariant functors from $\mathcal{C}$ to the category of $\mathscr{U}$-sets, and denote it by $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})_{\mathscr{U}}$ (or simply $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$ if there is no risk of confusion). The objects of $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})_{\mathscr{U}}$ are called **$\mathscr{U}$-presheaves** (of simply presheaves) over $\mathcal{C}$. If $\mathcal{C}$ is $\mathscr{U}$-small, then $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})_{\mathscr{U}}$ is a $\mathscr{U}$-category. However, this is not true in general if $\mathcal{C}$ is only assumed to be a $\mathscr{U}$-category.

Let x be an object of a $\mathscr{U}$-category $\mathcal{C}$. We can associate with x a presheaf $h_x : \mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathscr{U}\text{-}\mathbf{Set}$, defined in the following way:

- If $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(y,x)$ is an element of $\mathscr{U}$, then we set $h_x(y) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(y,x)$.
- Suppose that $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(y,x)$ is not an element of $\mathscr{U}$ and let $R(Z)$ be the relation "the set Z is the target of an isomorphism $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(y,x) \xrightarrow{\sim} Z$". We then put $h_x(y) = \tau_Z(R(Z))$.

Let $R'(u)$ be the relation "u is a bijection from $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(y,x)$ to $h_x(y)$" and set $\varphi(y,x) = \tau_u(R'(u))$. Then in both cases, we have a canonical isomorphism

$$\varphi(y,x) : \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(y,x) \xrightarrow{\sim} h_y(x).$$

Now let $u : y \to y'$ be a morphism of $\mathcal{C}$. Then by composition, u defines a map

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(u,x) : \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(y',x) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(y,x)$$

and we define $h_x(u)$ to be the composition

$$h_x(u) = \varphi(y,x)\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(x,u)\varphi(y,x)^{-1}.$$

It is immediate to verify that h_x then defines a functor $\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathscr{U}\text{-}\mathbf{Set}$.

1.2.2 Projective limits and inductive limits

1.2.3 Exactness properties of the category of presheaves

1.2.4 The functors $\mathcal{H}om$ and $\mathcal{I}so$

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category and F, G be objects of $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$. We define an object $\mathcal{H}om(F, G)$ of $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$ in the following way:

$$\mathcal{H}om(F,G)(S) = \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C}_{/S})}(F_S, G_S) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C}_{/S})}(F \times h_S, G \times h_S) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})}(F \times h_S, G).$$

It is easy to verify that $\mathcal{H}om(F, G)$ possesses the following properties:

- $\mathcal{H}om(e, G) \cong G$,
- If E is an object of $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$, then
$$\mathcal{H}om(E, F \times G) \cong \mathcal{H}om(E, F) \times \mathcal{H}om(E, G). \tag{1.2.4.1}$$
- The functor Hom commutes with base change:
$$\mathcal{H}om(F_S, G_S) \cong \mathcal{H}om(F, G)_S. \tag{1.2.4.2}$$
- $(F, G) \mapsto \mathcal{H}om(F, G)$ is a bifunctor which is contravariant on F and covariant on G.

Now we consider an object E of $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$. Let $\phi : E \times F \to G$ be a morphism, we want to associates with ϕ a morphism from E into $\mathrm{Hom}(F, G)$. For this, consider a morphism $S' \to S$ of $\mathcal{C}$. We then have the following induced maps:

$$E(S) \times F(S') \to E(S') \times F(S') \xrightarrow{\phi(S')} G(S').$$

Any element e of $E(S)$ therefore defines a map $F(S') \to G(S')$, which is functorial on S'; that is, an element $\theta_\phi(e)$ of $\mathcal{H}om(F, G)(S)$. We therefore obtain a map

$$\mathrm{Hom}(E \times F, G) \to \mathrm{Hom}(E, \mathcal{H}om(F, G)), \quad \phi \mapsto \theta_\phi$$

which is functorial on E.

Proposition 1.2.4.1. *Let E, F, G be objects of $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$. Then the map $\phi \mapsto \theta_\phi$ is a bijection:*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})}(E \times F, G) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})}(E, \mathcal{H}om(F, G)), \tag{1.2.4.3}$$

and we obtain an isomorphism of functors

$$\mathcal{H}om(E \times F, G) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{H}om(E, \mathcal{H}om(F, G)). \tag{1.2.4.4}$$

Proof. We consider the two members of (1.2.4.3) as functors of E. The first assertion is then valid for $E = h_X$, which follows directly from the definition of $\mathcal{H}om(F, G)$. On the other hand, since the two functors both transforms inductive limits to projective limits and any object of $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$ can be written as an inductive limits of h_X, where X runs through $\mathcal{C}_{/E}$, we conclude that (1.2.4.3) is a bijection.

We can also give a direct proof of (1.2.4.3). To any element $\theta \in \mathrm{Hom}(E, \mathcal{H}om(F, G))$, we associate an element ϕ_θ of $\mathrm{Hom}(E \times F, G)$ as follows. For any $S \in \mathcal{C}$, we have a map

$$\theta(S) : E(S) \to \mathcal{H}om(F, G)(S) = \mathrm{Hom}(F \times S, G)$$

which is functorial on S. If $(e, f) \in E(S) \times F(S)$, then f can be considered as a morphism $S \to F$, so $f \times \mathrm{id}_S$ is a morphism $S \to F \times S$. On the other hand, $\theta(S)(e)$ is a morphism $F \times S \to G$, so by composing we obtain a morphism

$$\theta(S)(e) \circ (f \times \mathrm{id}_S) : S \to G,$$

which is an element $\phi_\theta(e, f)$ of $G(S)$. We verify immediately that the correspondence $S \mapsto \phi_\theta(S)$ is functorial on S, so we get a morphism $\phi_\theta : E \times F \to G$. It then remains to check that $\theta \mapsto \phi_\theta$ and $\phi \mapsto \theta_\phi$ are inverses of each other, which is straightforward from definition.

We now prove the isomorphism (1.2.4.4). If $S \in \mathcal{C}$, then by (1.2.4.2) and (1.2.4.3) applied to $\mathcal{C}_{/S}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{H}om(E, \mathcal{H}om(F,G))(S) &\cong \mathrm{Hom}_S(E_S, \mathcal{H}om_S(F_S, G_S)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_S(E_S \times_S F_S, G_S)\\ &\cong \mathrm{Hom}(E \times F \times S, G) \cong \mathcal{H}om(E \times F, G)(S),\end{aligned}$$

and these isomorphisms are functorial on S. □

Corollary 1.2.4.2. *We have the following isomorphisms:*

$$\mathrm{Hom}(E, \mathcal{H}om(F,G)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(F, \mathcal{H}om(E,G)), \tag{1.2.4.5}$$
$$\mathcal{H}om(E, \mathcal{H}om(F,G)) \cong \mathcal{H}om(F, \mathcal{H}om(E,G)). \tag{1.2.4.6}$$

Proof. The first isomorphism follows from (1.2.4.3) and the fact that $E \times F \cong F \times E$, and the second one follows from (1.2.4.2). □

In particular, if $E = e$ is the final object, then since $\mathcal{H}om(e, G) \cong G$, we have

$$\Gamma(\mathcal{H}om(F,G)) = \mathrm{Hom}(e, \mathcal{H}om(F,G)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(F, \mathcal{H}om(e,G)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(F,G).$$

We also note that the composition of Hom induces a functorial morphsim

$$\circ : \mathcal{H}om(F,G) \times \mathcal{H}om(G,H) \to \mathcal{H}om(F,H).$$

In other words, with the operation $\mathcal{H}om$ and $\times$, the category $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$ is self-enriched.

If F and G are objects of $\mathrm{PSh}(\mathcal{C})$, we denote by $\mathrm{Iso}(F,G)$ the subset of $\mathrm{Hom}(F,G)$ formed by isomorphisms from F to G. We define a subobject $\mathcal{I}so(F,G)$ of $\mathcal{H}om(F,G)$ by

$$\mathcal{I}so(F,G)(S) = \mathrm{Iso}(F_S, G_S).$$

We then have the following isomorphisms

$$\Gamma(\mathcal{I}so(F,G)) \cong \mathrm{Iso}(F,G), \quad \mathrm{Iso}(F,G) \cong \mathrm{Iso}(G,F).$$

In the particular case where $F = G$, we put

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}nd(F) &= \mathcal{H}om(F,F), & \mathrm{End}(F) &= \mathrm{Hom}(F,F) \cong \Gamma(\mathcal{E}nd(F)),\\ \mathcal{A}ut(F) &= \mathcal{I}so(F,F), & \mathrm{Aut}(F) &= \mathrm{Iso}(F,F) \cong \Gamma(\mathcal{A}ut(F)).\end{aligned}$$

It is clear that the formations of $\mathcal{I}so$, $\mathcal{A}ut$, $\mathcal{E}nd$ also commutes with base changes.

Remark 1.2.4.3. Note that we can construct an object isomorphic to $\mathrm{Iso}(F,G)$ in the following way: we have a morphism

$$\mathcal{H}om(F,G) \times \mathcal{H}om(G,F) \to \mathcal{E}nd(F);$$

By permuting F and G, we then deduce a morphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}(F,G) \times \mathrm{Hom}(G,F) \to \mathcal{E}nd(F) \times \mathcal{E}nd(G).$$

On the other hand, the identity morphism of F is an element of $\mathrm{End}(F)$ and defines a morphism $e \to \mathcal{E}nd(F)$. By composition, we then obtain a morphism

$$e \mapsto \mathcal{E}nd(F) \times \mathcal{E}nd(G).$$

It it then immediate to see that the fiber product of e and $\mathcal{H}om(F,G) \times \mathcal{H}om(G,F)$ is isomorphic to $\mathrm{Iso}(F,G)$.

The definitions above are applicable in particular if $F = h_X$ and $G = h_Y$. In the case where $\mathcal{H}om(h_X, h_Y)$ is representable by an object of $\mathcal{C}$, we denote this object by $\mathcal{H}om(X,Y)$. It possesses the following property: if $Z \times X$ is representable, then

$$\mathrm{Hom}(Z, \mathcal{H}om(X,Y)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(Z \times X, Y).$$

We can also define the objects $\mathcal{I}so(X)$, $\mathcal{E}nd(X)$ and $\mathcal{A}ut(X)$. The preceding argumants also applies to the categories of the form $\mathcal{C}_{/S}$, and in this case, the corresponding objects are denoted by $\mathcal{H}om_S$, $\mathcal{I}so_S$, etc.

1.3 Abelian Category

1.3.1 Additive categories

1.3.1.1 Preaditive category

Definition 1.3.1.1. A category $\mathcal{A}$ is called **preadditive** if each morphism set $\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(X,Y)$ is endowed with the structure of an abelian group such that the compositions

$$\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(X,Y) \times \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(Y,Z) \to \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(X,Z)$$

are bilinear. A functor $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ of preadditive categories is called an **additive functor** if and only if

$$F : \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(X,Y) \to \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{B}}(F(X), F(Y))$$

is a homomorphism of abelian groups for all $X, Y \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{A})$.

In particular for every X, Y there exists at least one morphism $X \to Y$, namely the **zero map**.

Lemma 1.3.1.2. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a preadditive category. Let X be an object of $\mathcal{A}$. The following are equivalent:*

(a) *X is a initial object.*

(b) *X is a final object.*

(c) $\mathrm{id}_X = 0$ *in* $\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(X,X)$.

Furthermore, if such an object 0 exists, then a morphism $f : X \to Y$ factors through 0 if and only if $f = 0$.

Proof. Clearly if X is a final or initial object, then $\mathrm{id}_X = 0$ is the unique morphism $X \to X$. Now assume $\mathrm{id}_X = 0$ holds, then

$$f \in \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(X,Y) \Rightarrow f = f \circ \mathrm{id}_X = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad g \in \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(Y,X) \Rightarrow g = \mathrm{id}_X \circ g = 0.$$

Thus X is final and initial. □

Definition 1.3.1.3. In a preadditive category $\mathcal{A}$ we call **zero object**, and we denote it 0 any final and initial object as in Lemma 1.3.1.2 above.

Proposition 1.3.1.4. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a preadditive category. Let $X, Y \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{A})$. Then the product $X \times Y$ exists if and only if the coproduct $X \amalg Y$ exists. In this case $X \times Y \cong X \amalg Y$.*

Proof. Suppose that $X \times Y$ exists with projections $\pi_1 : X \times Y \to X$ and $\pi_2 : X \times Y \to Y$. Denote $i_1 : X \to X \times Y$ the morphism corresponding to $(0,1)$:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & X \arrow[d, dashed, "i_1"] \arrow[ddl, bend right, "1"'] \arrow[ddr, bend left, "0"] & \\
 & X \times Y \arrow[dl, "\pi_1"'] \arrow[dr, "\pi_2"] & \\
X & & Y
\end{tikzcd}$$

Similarly, denote $i_2 : Y \to X \times Y$ the morphism corresponding to $(0,1)$. Thus we have the commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[rr, "1"] \arrow[dr, "i_1"] & & X \\
 & X \times Y \arrow[ur, "\pi_1"] \arrow[dr, "\pi_2"] & \\
Y \arrow[rr, "1"] \arrow[ur, "i_2"] & & Y
\end{tikzcd}$$

where the diagonal compositions are zero. It follows that $i_1 \circ \pi_1 + i_2 \circ \pi_2$ is the identity since it is a morphism which upon composing with π_1 gives π_1 and upon composing with π_2 gives π_2. Suppose given morphisms $f : X \to Z$ and $g : Y \to Z$. Then we can form the map $f \circ \pi_1 + g \circ \pi_2 : X \times Y \to Z$. In this way we get a bijection $\mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(X \times Y, Z) = \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(X,Z) \times \mathrm{Mor}_{\mathcal{A}}(Y,Z)$ which show that $X \times Y \cong X \amalg Y$. The coproduet case can be done similarly. □

Definition 1.3.1.5. Given a pair of objects X, Y in a preadditive category $\mathcal{A}$ we call **direct sum**, and we denote it $X \oplus Y$ the product $X \times Y$ endowed with the morphisms π_1, π_2, i_1, i_2 as in Proposition 1.3.1.4 above.

Proposition 1.3.1.6. *Let $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}$ be preadditive categories. Let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$ be an additive functor. Then F transforms direct sums to direct sums and zero to zero.*

Proof. Suppose F is additive. A direct sum Z of X and Y is characterized by having morphisms

$$i_1 : X \to Z,\ i_2 : Y \to Z,\ \pi_1 : Z \to X,\ \pi_2 : Z \to Y$$

such that

$$\pi_1 \circ i_1 = \mathrm{id}_X, \pi_2 \circ i_2 = \mathrm{id}_Y, \pi_2 \circ i_1 = 0, \pi_1 \circ i_2 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad i_1 \circ \pi_1 + i_2 \circ \pi_2 = \mathrm{id}_Z\,.$$

Clearly $F(X), F(Y), F(Z)$ and the morphisms $F(i_1), F(i_2), F(\pi_1), F(\pi_1)$ satisfy exactly the same relations (by additivity) and we see that $F(Z)$ is a direct sum of $F(X)$ and $F(Y)$. □

1.3.1.2 Additive category

Definition 1.3.1.7. A category $\mathcal{A}$ is called **additive** if it is preadditive and finite products exist, in other words it has a zero object and direct sums.

Namely the empty product is a finite product and if it exists, then it is a final object.

Definition 1.3.1.8. Let $\varphi : A \to B$ be a morphism in an additive category $\mathcal{A}$. A morphism $\iota : K \to A$ is a **kernel** of φ if $\varphi \circ \iota = 0$ and for all morphisms $\zeta : Z \to A$ such that $\varphi \circ \zeta = 0$ there exists a unique $\widetilde{\zeta} : Z \to K$ making the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
Z \arrow[r, "\zeta"'] \arrow[rr, bend left, "0"] \arrow[dr, dashed, "\exists!\widetilde{\zeta}"'] & A \arrow[r, "\varphi"'] & B \\
& K \arrow[u, "\iota"] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

commute.

A morphism $\psi : B \to C$ is a **cokernel** of φ if $\psi \circ \varphi = 0$ and for all morphisms $\beta : B \to Z$ such that $\beta \circ \varphi = 0$ there exists a unique $\widetilde{\beta} : C \to Z$ making the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
& C \arrow[dr, dashed, "\exists!\widetilde{\beta}"] & \\
A \arrow[r, "\varphi"] \arrow[rr, bend right, "0"'] & B \arrow[u, "\psi"] \arrow[r, "\beta"] & Z
\end{tikzcd}$$

commute.

Definition 1.3.1.9. If a kernel of $\varphi : A \to B$ exists, then a **coimage** of φ is a cokernel for the morphism $\ker\varphi \to A$. If a cokernel of $\varphi : A \to B$ exists, then the **image** of φ is a kernel of the morphism $B \to \operatorname{coker}\varphi$.

Lemma 1.3.1.10. *In any additive category, kernels are monomorphisms and cokernels are epimorphisms.*

Proof. Let $\varphi : A \to B$ be a morphism in an additive category $\mathcal{A}$, and let $\ker\varphi : K \to A$ be its kernel. Let $\zeta : Z \to K$ be a morphism such that $\ker\varphi \circ \zeta = 0$. Then the composition $\varphi \circ (\ker\varphi \circ \zeta)$ is 0 and by definition of kernel, $\ker\varphi \circ \zeta$ factors uniquely through K:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
Z \arrow[r, bend left, "\zeta"] \arrow[r, bend right, dashed, "\exists!"'] & K \arrow[r, "\ker\varphi"] & A \arrow[r, "\varphi"] & B
\end{tikzcd}$$

since $\ker\varphi \circ \zeta = 0 = \ker\varphi \circ 0$, the uniqueness of the decomposition gives $\zeta = 0$.

The proof that cokernels are epimorphisms is analogous. □

Now we relate the direct sum to kernels as follows.

Proposition 1.3.1.11. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a preadditive category. Let $X \oplus Y$ with morphisms as in Propostion 1.3.1.4 be a direct sum in $\mathcal{A}$. Then $i_1 : X \to X \oplus Y$ is a kernel of $\pi_2 : X \oplus Y \to Y$. Dually, π_1 is a cokernel for i_2.*

Proof. Let $f : Z \to X \oplus Y$ be a morphism such that $\pi_2 \circ f = 0$. We have to show that there exists a unique morphism $g : Z \to X$ such that $f = i_1 \circ g$:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[rr, "1"] \arrow[dr, "i_1"] & & X \\
Z \arrow[r, "f"] & X \times Y \arrow[ur, "\pi_1"] \arrow[dr, "\pi_2"] & \\
Y \arrow[rr, "1"] \arrow[ur, "i_2"] & & Y
\end{tikzcd}$$

Since $i_1 \circ \pi_1 + i_2 \circ \pi_2$ is the identity on $X \oplus Y$ we see that

$$f = (i_1 \circ \pi_1 + i_2 \circ \pi_2) \circ f = i_1 \circ \pi_1 \circ f$$

and hence $g = \pi_1 \circ f$ works. Uniquess holds because $\pi_1 \circ i_1$ is the identity on X. The proof of the second statement is dual. □

Theorem 1.3.1.12. *Let $\varphi : A \to B$ be a morphism in a preadditive category such that the kernel, cokernel, image and coimage all exist. Then φ can be factored uniquely*

$$\begin{tikzcd}
A \arrow[r] \arrow[rrr, bend left, "\varphi"] & \operatorname{coim} \varphi \arrow[r] & \operatorname{im} \varphi \arrow[r] & B
\end{tikzcd}$$

Proof. There is a canonical morphism $\operatorname{coim} \varphi \to B$ because $\ker \varphi \to A \to B$ is zero,

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & & \operatorname{im} \varphi & \\
\ker \varphi \arrow[r] & A \arrow[r, "\varphi"] \arrow[d] & B \arrow[r] & \operatorname{coker} \varphi \\
 & \operatorname{coim} \varphi \arrow[ur, dashed] & &
\end{tikzcd}$$

The composition $\operatorname{coim} \varphi \to B \to \operatorname{coker} \varphi$ is zero, because it is the unique morphism which gives rise to the morphism $A \to B \to \operatorname{coker} \varphi$ which is zero. Hence $\operatorname{coim} \varphi \to B$ factors uniquely through $\operatorname{im} \varphi \to B$, which gives us the desired map. □

1.3.2 Abelian categories

An abelian category is a category satisfying just enough axioms so the snake lemma holds. An axiom is that the canonical map $\operatorname{coim} \varphi \to \operatorname{im} \varphi$ of Theorem 1.3.1.12 is always an isomorphism.

Definition 1.3.2.1. A category $\mathcal{A}$ is **abelian** if it is additive, if all kernels and cokernels exist, and if the natural map $\operatorname{coim} \varphi \to \operatorname{im} \varphi$ is an isomorphism for all morphisms φ of $\mathcal{A}$.

Definition 1.3.2.2. Let $\varphi : A \to B$ be a morphism in an abelian category.

(a) We say φ is **injective** if $\ker \varphi = 0$.

(b) We say φ is **surjective** if $\operatorname{coker} \varphi = 0$.

Proposition 1.3.2.3. *Let $\varphi : A \to B$ be a morphism in an abelian category. Then*

(a) *φ is **injective** if and only if f is a monomorphism.*

(b) *φ is **surjective** if and only if f is a epimorphism.*

Proof. The condition for monomorphism can be interpreted as: If $\psi : Z \to A$ is any morphism such that $\varphi \circ \psi = 0$, then ψ factors through $0 \to A$. So φ is a monomorphism if and only if $0 \to A$ is its kernel. The same holds for epimorphism. □

Proposition 1.3.2.4. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category. All finite limits and finite colimits exist in $\mathcal{A}$.*

Proof. To show that finite limits exist it suffices to show that finite products and equalizers exist. Finite products exist by definition and the equalizer of $f, g : X \to Y$ is the kernel of $a - b$. The argument for finite colimits is similar but dual to this. □

Example 1.3.2.5. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category. Pushouts and fibre products in $\mathcal{A}$ have the following simple descriptions:

(a) If $f : X \to Y, g : Z \to Y$ are morphisms in $\mathcal{A}$, then we have the fibre product: $X \times_Y Z = \ker((f, -g) : X \oplus Z \to Y)$.

(b) If $f : Y \to X, g : Y \to Z$ are morphisms in $\mathcal{A}$, then we have the pushout: $X \amalg_Y Z = \operatorname{coker}((f, -g) : Y \oplus X \to Z)$.

Lemma 1.3.2.6. *In an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$, every kernel is the kernel of its cokernel; every cokernel is the cokernel of its kernel.*

Proof. Let $\varphi : K \to A$ be the kernel of some morphism $A \to B$; since $\mathcal{A}$ is abelian, φ has a cokernel $\psi : A \to C$. The composition $K \to A \to B$ is 0, so $A \to B$ factors through ψ by definition of cokernel:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
C \arrow[dr, dashed] & \\
A \arrow[u, "\psi"] \arrow[r] & B \\
K \arrow[u, "\varphi"] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

Now let $Z \to A$ be a morphism such that the composition $Z \to A \to C$ is the zero-morphism; then so is the composition $Z \to A \to B$. Therefore $Z \to A$ factors through a unique morphism $Z \to K$,

$$\begin{tikzcd}
& C \arrow[dr, dashed] & \\
Z \arrow[r] \arrow[dr, dashed] & A \arrow[u, "\psi"] \arrow[r] & B \\
& K \arrow[u, "\varphi"] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

since φ is the kernel of $A \to B$. But this shows that $\varphi : A \to B$ satisfies the property defining the kernel of its cokernel $A \to C$, as stated. □

Proposition 1.3.2.7. *Let $\varphi : A \to B$ be a morphism in an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$.*

(a) *φ is a monomorphism if and only if φ has a left-invere.*

(b) *φ is a epimorphism if and only if φ has a right-invere.*

Thus φ is an isomorphism if and only if it is a monomorphism and a epimorphism.

Proof. If φ has a left-inverse, then clearly it is monic. Conversely, if φ is a monomorphis, then the kernel of φ is $0 \to A$. Further, φ is the cokernel of $0 \to A$. Now consider the identity $A \to A$:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
0 \arrow[r] & A \arrow[r, "\varphi"] \arrow[d, "\mathrm{id}_A"'] & B \\
& A &
\end{tikzcd}$$

Since $0 \to A \to A$ is the zero morphism and φ is the cokernel of $0 \to A$, we obtain a unique morphism $\psi : B \to A$ making the diagram commute:

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & A \arrow[r, "\varphi"] \arrow[d, "\mathrm{id}_A"'] & B \arrow[dl, "\psi"] \\ & A & \end{tikzcd}$$

As $\psi \circ \varphi = \mathrm{id}_A$, this shows that φ has a right-inverse. The part (b) can be done similarly. □

1.3.3 Exact sequence in Abelian category

Definition 1.3.3.1. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an additive category. We say a sequence of morphisms

$$\cdots \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{\varphi} B \xrightarrow{\psi} C \longrightarrow \cdots$$

in $\mathcal{A}$ is a **complex** if the composition of any two arrows is zero. If $\mathcal{A}$ is abelian then we say a sequence as above is **exact at B** if $\operatorname{im} \psi = \ker \varphi$. We say it is exact if it is exact at every object. A **short exact sequence** is an exact complex of the form

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{\varphi} B \xrightarrow{\psi} C \longrightarrow 0$$

Proposition 1.3.3.2. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category. Let $0 \to M_1 \to M_2 \to M_3 \to 0$ be a complex of $\mathcal{A}$.*

(a) $M_1 \to M_2 \to M_3 \to 0$ *is exact if and only if*

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(M_3, N) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(M_2, N) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(M_1, N)$$

is an exact sequence of abelian groups for all objects N of $\mathcal{A}$.

(b) $0 \to M_1 \to M_2 \to M_3$ *is exact if and only if*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(N, M_1) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(N, M_2) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(N, M_3) \longrightarrow 0$$

is an exact sequence of abelian groups for all objects N of $\mathcal{A}$.

Example 1.3.3.3. For a slightly more interesting example, consider a diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} D \arrow[r, "\varphi'"] \arrow[d, "\psi'"'] & B \arrow[d, "\psi"] \\ A \arrow[r, "\varphi"'] & C \end{tikzcd}$$

and the associated sequence

$$D \xrightarrow{(\psi', \varphi')} A \oplus B \xrightarrow{(\varphi, -\psi)} C$$

obtained by letting $A \oplus B$ play both roles of product and coproduct. Then

1. the diagram is commutative if and only if this sequence is a complex;
2. the sequence obtained by adding a 0 to the left,

$$0 \longrightarrow D \longrightarrow A \oplus B \longrightarrow C$$

is exact if and only if D may be identified with the fibered product $A \times_C B$. If this holds, we say the diagram is **cartesian**.

3. likewise, the sequence
$$D \longrightarrow A \oplus B \longrightarrow C \longrightarrow 0$$
is exact if and only if C may be identified with the fibered coproduct $A \amalg_D B$. If this holds, we say the diagram is **cocartesian**.

Lemma 1.3.3.4. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category. Let*

$$\begin{tikzcd} D \arrow[r, "\varphi'"] \arrow[d, "\psi'"'] & B \arrow[d, "\psi"] \\ A \arrow[r, "\varphi"'] & C \end{tikzcd}$$

be a commutative diagram.

(a) *If the diagram is cartesian, then the morphism* $\ker \varphi' \to \ker \varphi$ *induced by ψ' is an isomorphism.*

(b) *If the diagram is cocartesian, then the morphism* $\operatorname{coker} \varphi' \to \operatorname{coker} \varphi$ *induced by ψ is an isomorphism.*

Proof. Suppose the diagram is cartesian. Let $\epsilon : \ker \varphi' \to \ker \varphi$ be induced by ψ'. Let $i : \ker \varphi \to A$ and $j : \ker \varphi' \to D$ be the canonical injections. Consider the map $\alpha : \ker \varphi \to D$ determined by the morphisms $(i, 0)$:
$$\psi' \circ \alpha = i, \quad \varphi' \circ \alpha = 0.$$
Then there is an induced morphism $\gamma : \ker \varphi \to \ker \varphi'$:

$$\begin{tikzcd} \ker \varphi' \arrow[r, "j"] \arrow[d, "\epsilon"] & D \arrow[r, "\varphi'"] \arrow[d, "\psi'"'] & B \arrow[d, "\psi"] \\ \ker \varphi \arrow[r, "i"] \arrow[ur, "\alpha"] \arrow[u, bend left, "\gamma"] & A \arrow[r, "\varphi"'] & C \end{tikzcd}$$

It follows that
$$\psi' \circ j \circ \gamma \circ \epsilon = \psi' \circ \alpha \circ \epsilon = i \circ \epsilon = \psi' \circ j \quad \text{and} \quad \varphi' \circ j \circ \gamma \circ \epsilon = \varphi' \circ \alpha \circ \epsilon = 0 = \psi' \circ j.$$
By the universal property of pull back, we claim $j \circ \gamma \circ \epsilon = j$. Since j is a monomorphism, this means $\gamma \circ \varepsilon = \mathrm{id}_{\ker \varphi'}$.

Furthermore, we have
$$i \circ \epsilon \circ \gamma = \psi' \circ j \circ \gamma = \psi' \circ \alpha = i.$$
Since i is a monomorphism this implies $\epsilon \circ \gamma = \mathrm{id}_{\ker \varphi}$. This proves (a). Now, (b) follows by duality. □

Lemma 1.3.3.5. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category. Let*

$$\begin{tikzcd} D \arrow[r, "\varphi'"] \arrow[d, "\psi'"'] & B \arrow[d, "\psi"] \\ A \arrow[r, "\varphi"'] & C \end{tikzcd}$$

be a commutative diagram.

(a) *If the diagram is cartesian and φ is an epimorphism, then the diagram is cocartesian and φ' is an epimorphism.*

(b) *If the diagram is cocartesian and φ' is an monomorphism, then the diagram is cartesian and φ is an epimorphism.*

Proof. Suppose the diagram is cartesian and φ is an epimorphism. Let $\alpha = (\psi', \varphi') : D \to A \oplus B$ and let $\beta = (\varphi, -\psi) : A \oplus B \to C$. As φ is an epimorphism, α is an epimorphism, too. Therefore by Example 1.3.3.3 the diagram is cocartesian. Finally, φ' is an epimorphism by Lemma 1.3.3.4. This proves (1), and (2) follows by duality. □

Corollary 1.3.3.6. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category.*

(a) *If $X \to Y$ is surjective, then for every $Z \to Y$ the projection $X \times_Y Z \to Z$ is surjective.*

(b) *If $X \to Y$ is injective, then for every $X \to Z$ the morphism $Z \to Z \amalg_X Y$ is injective.*

Lemma 1.3.3.7. *Let* $X' \xrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} X''$ *be a complex. Then the conditions below are equivalent:*

(i) *the complex* $X' \xrightarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} X''$ *is exact.*

(ii) *the induced morphism $X' \to \ker g$ is an epimorphism.*

(iii) *for any morphism $h : S \to X$ such that $g \circ h = 0$, there exist an epimorphism $f' : S' \twoheadrightarrow S$ and a commutative diagram*

$$\begin{tikzcd}
S' \arrow[r, two heads, "f'"] \arrow[d] & S \arrow[d, "h"] \arrow[dr, "0"] & \\
X' \arrow[r, "f"] & X \arrow[r, "g"] & X''
\end{tikzcd}$$

Proof. (i) $\iff$ (ii): the exactness is saying $\ker g = \operatorname{im} f$. If $X' \to \ker g$ is epic, by Exercise 1.3.1, $\ker g = \operatorname{im} f$ as needed. Conversely, if $\ker g = \in f$, by Lemma **??**, $X' \to \ker g$ is epic.

(i) $\Rightarrow$ (iii): It is enough to choose $X' \times_{\ker g} S$ as S'. Since $X' \to \ker g$ is an epimorphism, $S' \to S$ is an epimorphism by Lemma 1.3.3.4.

(iii) $\Rightarrow$ (ii): Choose $S = \ker g$. Then the diagram becomes

$$\begin{tikzcd}
S' \arrow[r, two heads, "f'"] \arrow[d] & \ker g \arrow[d] \arrow[dr, "0"] & \\
X' \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[ur, dashed] & X \arrow[r, "g"] & X''
\end{tikzcd}$$

since $g \circ f = 0$, by the universal property of $\ker g$, there is a unique morphism $X' \to \ker g$. It follows that the composition $S' \to X' \to \ker g$ is an epimorphism. Hence $X' \to \ker g$ is an epimorphism. $\square$

1.3.4 Exercise

Exercise 1.3.1. Let $\varphi : A \to B$ be a morphism in an abelian category, and assume φ decomposes as an epimorphism π followed by a monomorphism i:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
A \arrow[r, two heads, "\pi"] \arrow[rr, bend right, "\varphi"'] & C \arrow[r, tail, "i"] & B
\end{tikzcd}$$

Prove that necessarily $\pi = \operatorname{coim} \varphi$ and $i = \operatorname{im} \varphi$.

Proof. From the universal property of image and coimage, we have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & \operatorname{coim} \varphi \arrow[dr, bend left, tail] & \\
A \arrow[ur, bend left, two heads] \arrow[r, two heads, "\pi"] \arrow[dr, bend right, two heads] & C \arrow[r, tail, "i"] \arrow[u, dashed, "\exists! \nu"] & B \\
 & \operatorname{im} \varphi \arrow[u, dashed, "\exists! \mu"] \arrow[ur, bend right, tail] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

By simple observation, we find μ and ν are both monomorphic and epimorphic, hence are isomorphisms. $\square$

1.4 Triangulated categories

1.4.1 Localization of categories

Consider a category $\mathcal{C}$ and a family $\mathcal{S}$ of morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$. The aim of localization is to find a new category $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ and a functor $Q : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ which sends the morphisms belonging to $\mathcal{C}$ to isomorphisms in $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$, $(\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}, Q)$ being "universal" for such a property. We also discuss with some details the localization of functors. When considering a functor F from $\mathcal{C}$ to a category $\mathcal{A}$ which does not necessarily send the morphisms in $\mathcal{S}$ to isomorphisms in $\mathcal{A}$, it is possible to define the right (resp. left) localization of F, a functor $R_\mathcal{S}F$ (resp. $L_\mathcal{S}F$) from $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ to $\mathcal{A}$. Such a right localization always exists if $\mathcal{A}$ admits filtrant inductive limits.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category and $\mathcal{S}$ be a family of morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$. A **localization** of $\mathcal{C}$ by $\mathcal{S}$ is the data of a category $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ and a functor $Q : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ satisfying:

(L1) for all $s \in \mathcal{S}$, $Q(s)$ is an isomorphism;

(L2) for any category $\mathcal{A}$ and any functor $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}$ such that $F(s)$ is an isomorphism for all $s \in \mathcal{S}$, there exist a functor $F_\mathcal{S} : \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S} \to \mathcal{A}$ and an isomorphism $F \cong F_\mathcal{S} \circ Q$ visualized by the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathcal{C} \arrow[r, "F"] \arrow[d, "Q"'] & \mathcal{A} \\ \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S} \arrow[ur, dashed, "F_\mathcal{S}"'] & \end{tikzcd}$$

(L3) if G and G' are two functors from $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ to $\mathcal{A}$, then the natural map

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S},\mathcal{A})}(G, G') \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{A})}(G \circ Q, G' \circ Q) \tag{1.4.1.1}$$

is bijective.

Note that condition (L3) means that the functor $Q^\star : \mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}, A) \to \mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, A)$ induced by composition is fully faithful. In particular, this implies that $F_\mathcal{S}$ in (L2) is unique up to isomorphism.

Proposition 1.4.1.1. *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category and $\mathcal{S}$ be a family of morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$.*

(a) *If $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ exists, it is unique up to equivalence of categories.*

(b) *If $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ exists, then, denoting by $\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}$ the image of $\mathcal{S}$ in $\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}}$, $(\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}})_{\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}}$ exists and there is an equivalence of categories $(\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S})^{\mathrm{op}} \cong (\mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}})_{\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}}$.*

Proof. If $(\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}, Q)$ and $(\mathcal{C}'_\mathcal{S}, Q')$ are two localizations of $\mathcal{C}$ by $\mathcal{S}$, then since $Q'(s)$ is an isomorphism for any $s \in \mathcal{S}$, we obtain a funcor $G : \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S} \to \mathcal{C}'_\mathcal{S}$ such that $GQ \cong Q'$; similarly, there is a functor $G' : \mathcal{C}'_\mathcal{S} \to \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ such that $G'Q' \cong Q$. Since $G'GQ \cong Q$, we conclude from (L3) that $G'G \cong \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}}$, and similarly $GG' \cong \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}'_\mathcal{S}}$. The second assertion follows immediately from (a) and a easy verification by reversing the arrows. □

The existence of the localization $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ is generally true, since we can construct $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ by adding virtue inverses to $\mathcal{C}$ (like the construction of free groups). More precisely, we have $\mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}) = \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$, and the morphisms in $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ are of the form

$$\cdots bt^{-1}as^{-1}\cdots = \left(\begin{tikzcd}[column sep=small] \cdots \arrow[dr] & & Y \arrow[dl, "s"'] \arrow[dr, "a"] & & W \arrow[dl, "t"'] \arrow[dr, "b"] & & \cdots \arrow[dl] \\ & X & & Z & & U & \end{tikzcd}\right)$$

where $a, b \in \mathrm{Mor}(\mathcal{C})$ and $s, t \in \mathcal{S}$, with the composition map defined in the obvious way subject to the relations

$$s^{-1}t^{-1} = (ts)^{-1}, \quad ss^{-1} = \mathrm{id}, \quad s^{-1}s = \mathrm{id}\,.$$

The problem is that the equivalence relation in $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ is now hard to manipulate: we can not tell which morphisms f, g in $\mathcal{C}$ satisfy $Q(f) = Q(g)$. Due to this failure, we now impose some additional conditions on the system $\mathcal{S}$, so that the resulting localization $\mathcal{C}_\mathcal{S}$ is way more easiler to describe.

Definition 1.4.1.2. The family $\mathcal{S}$ is called a **right multiplicative system** if it satisfies the following axioms:

(S1) For any object X of $\mathcal{C}$, id_X belongs to $\mathcal{S}$.

(S2) If two morphisms $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Y \to Z$ belong to $\mathcal{S}$, then $g \circ f$ belongs to $\mathcal{S}$.

(S3) Given two morphisms $f : X \to Y$ and $s : X \to X'$ with $s \in \mathcal{S}$, there exist $t : Y \to Y'$ and $g : X' \to Y'$ with $t \in \mathcal{S}$ such that the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, tail, "s"'] & Y \arrow[d, tail, dashed, "t"] \\ X' \arrow[r, dashed, "g"] & Y' \end{tikzcd}$$

(S4) Let $f, g : X \rightrightarrows Y$ be two morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$. If there exists a morphism $s : Z \to X$ in $\mathcal{S}$ such that $fs = gs$, then there exists $t : Y \to W$ in $\mathcal{S}$ such that $tf = tg$. This is visualized by the diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd} Z \arrow[r, tail, "s"] & X \arrow[r, shift left, "f"] \arrow[r, shift right, "g"'] & Y \arrow[r, tail, dashed, "t"] & W \end{tikzcd}$$

Remark 1.4.1.3. Axioms (S1)-(S2) asserts that there exists a half-full subcategory $\widetilde{\mathcal{S}}$ of $\mathcal{C}$ with $\mathrm{Ob}(\widetilde{\mathcal{S}}) = \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and $\mathrm{Mor}(\widetilde{\mathcal{S}}) = \mathcal{S}$. With these axioms, the notion of a right multiplicative system is stable by equivalence of categories.

Remark 1.4.1.4. The notion of a **left multiplicative system** is defined similarly by reversing the arrows. This means that the condition (S3) and (S4) are replaced by the conditions (S3′) and (S4′) below:

(S3′) Given two morphisms $f : X \to Y$ and $t : Y' \to Y$ with $t \in \mathcal{S}$, there exist $s : X' \to X$ and $g : X' \to Y'$ with $s \in \mathcal{S}$ such that the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{tikzcd} X' \arrow[r, dashed, "g"] \arrow[d, tail, dashed, "s"'] & Y' \arrow[d, tail, "t"] \\ X \arrow[r, "f"] & Y \end{tikzcd}$$

(S4′) Let $f, g : X \rightrightarrows Y$ be two morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$. If there exists a morphism $t : Y \to W$ in $\mathcal{S}$ such that $tf = tg$, then there exists $s : Z \to X$ in $\mathcal{S}$ such that $fs = gs$. This is visualized by the diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd} Z \arrow[r, tail, dashed, "s"] & X \arrow[r, shift left, "f"] \arrow[r, shift right, "g"'] & Y \arrow[r, tail, "t"] & W \end{tikzcd}$$

A collection $\mathcal{S}$ is simply called a **multiplicative system** if it is both a left multiplicative system and a right multiplicative system.

Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a system of morphisms of $\mathcal{C}$ satisfying axioms (S1)-(S2) and $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$. We define $\mathcal{S}_{/X}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}_{X/}$) to be the full subcategory of $\mathcal{C}_{/X}$ (resp. $\mathcal{C}_{X/}$) with objects (morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$) belonging to $\mathcal{S}$.

Proposition 1.4.1.5. *If $\mathcal{S}$ is a left (resp. right) multiplicative system. Then the category $\mathcal{S}_{/X}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}_{X/}$) is cofiltrant (resp. filtrant).*

Proof. Note that $(\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}})_{X/} = (\mathcal{S}_{/X})^{\mathrm{op}}$, so we only need to consider right multiplicative systems. For any objects $s : X \to Z$ and $s' : X \to Z'$ of $\mathcal{S}_{X/}$, by (S3) we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r, "s'"] \arrow[d, "s"'] & Z' \arrow[d, "t'"] \\ Z \arrow[r, "t"] & Y \end{tikzcd}$$

with $t \in S$. Then $ts \in \mathcal{S}$ by (S2) and the composition $ts : X \to Y$ belongs to $\mathcal{S}_{X/}$. Now consider two morphisms $f, g : Z \rightrightarrows Z'$ such that $fs = gs = s'$. Then by (S4) there exists $t : Z' \to W$ such that $tf = tg$, so $t \circ s' : X \to W$ belongs to $\mathcal{S}_{X/}$ and the compositions

$$\begin{tikzcd} (Z,s) \arrow[r, shift left, "f"] \arrow[r, shift right, "g"'] & (Z',s') \arrow[r, "t"] & (W, t\circ s') \end{tikzcd}$$

coincides; this completes the proof. □

Let X, Y be objects of $\mathcal{C}$. For left (resp. right) multiplicative system $\mathcal{S}$, we define a collection $M^l_{X,Y}$ (resp. $M^r_{X,Y}$), which will be considered to be the "morphisms" from X to Y in our localization category.

- If $\mathcal{S}$ is a left multiplicative system, we denote by $M^l_{X,Y}$ the collection of diagrams of the form

$$\begin{tikzcd} & Z \arrow[dl, "s"'] \arrow[dr, "a"] & \\ X & & Y \end{tikzcd}$$

  where $s \in \mathcal{S}$ (such a diagram will be denoted by $(Z; s, a)$).

- If $\mathcal{S}$ is a right multiplicative system, we denote by $M^r_{X,Y}$ the collection of diagrams of the form

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[dr, "a"'] & & Y \arrow[dl, "s"] \\ & Z & \end{tikzcd}$$

  where $s \in \mathcal{S}$ (such a diagram will be denoted by $(Z; a, s)$).

We define an equivalence relation on $M^l_{X,Y}$ (resp. $M^r_{X,Y}$) as follows: $(Z; s, a) \sim (Z'; s', a')$ (resp. $(Z; a, s) \sim (Z'; a', s')$) if there eixsts a commutative diagram of the form

$$\begin{tikzcd} & Z \arrow[dl, tail, "s"'] \arrow[dr, "a"] & \\ X & W \arrow[l, tail] \arrow[r] \arrow[u] \arrow[d] & Y \\ & Z' \arrow[ul, tail, "s'"] \arrow[ur, "a'"'] & \end{tikzcd} \quad \text{resp.} \quad \begin{tikzcd} & Z \arrow[d] & \\ X \arrow[ur, "a"] \arrow[r] \arrow[dr, "a'"'] & W & Y \arrow[l, tail] \arrow[ul, tail, "s"'] \arrow[dl, tail, "s'"] \\ & Z' \arrow[u] & \end{tikzcd}$$

(we use $\rightarrowtail$ to indicates a morphism in $\mathcal{S}$.) We also note that for any morphism $f : X \to Y$, axiom (S1) implies that $(X; \mathrm{id}_X, f) \in M^l_{X,Y}$ and $(X; f, \mathrm{id}_Y) \in M^r_{X,Y}$.

Lemma 1.4.1.6. *Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a left (resp. right) multiplicative system. For any object X, Y of $\mathcal{C}$, we have a bijection*

$$M^l_{X,Y}/\sim \xrightarrow{\sim} \varinjlim_{(Z\to X)\in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}_{/X})} \mathrm{Hom}(Z, Y), \quad [Z; s, a] \mapsto [a : Z \to Y],$$
$$M^r_{X,Y}/\sim \xrightarrow{\sim} \varinjlim_{(Y\to Z)\in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{S}_{Y/})} \mathrm{Hom}(X, Z), \quad [Z; a, s] \mapsto [a : X \to Z].$$

Proof. We consider the functor $\alpha : \mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}_{/X} \to \mathbf{Set}$ given by $(Z \to X) \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}(Z, Y)$. Then by definition we have

$$M^l_{X,Y} = \coprod_{Z\to X} \alpha(Z \to X).$$

On the other hand, it is not hard to see that the equivalence relation $\sim$ on $M^l_{X,Y}$ is induced from the limit $\varinjlim \mathrm{Hom}(Z, Y)$, so the claim follows. □

For a left multiplicative system $\mathcal{S}$, any objects X, Y of $\mathcal{C}$ and $(U; s, a) \in M^l_{X,Y}$ and $(V; t, b) \in M^l_{Y,Z}$, by axiom (S3) we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & & W \arrow[dl, "r"'] \arrow[dr, "c"] & & \\
 & U \arrow[dl, "s"'] \arrow[dr, "a"] & & V \arrow[dl, "t"'] \arrow[dr, "b"] & \\
X & & Y & & Z
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.4.1.2}$$

We now define the composition of $(U; s, a)$ and $(V; t, b)$ to be the equivalent class of $(W; sr, bc)$.

Proposition 1.4.1.7. *The composition law defined above is associative and only depends on the equivalent class of $(U; s, a)$ and $(V; t, b)$. Also, a similar result holds if $\mathcal{S}$ is a right multiplicative system.*

Proof. We first fix the diagram $(V; t, b)$. In view of the definition, it suffices to prove that in the following diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & U \arrow[dl, "s"'] \arrow[dr, "a"] & W \arrow[l, "r"'] \arrow[dr, "c"] & & \\
X & & Y & V \arrow[l, "t"'] \arrow[r, "b"] & Z \\
 & U' \arrow[ul, "s'"] \arrow[uu, "x"] \arrow[ur, "a'"'] & W' \arrow[l, "r'"] \arrow[ur, "c'"'] & &
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.4.1.3}$$

we have $(W; sr, bc) \sim (W'; s'r', bc')$. For this, we apply axiom (S3) twice to obtain the following solid diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
U \arrow[dr, "a"] & W \arrow[l, "r"'] \arrow[dr, "c"] & & & & \\
 & Y & V \arrow[l, "t"'] & & & \\
U' \arrow[uu, "x"] \arrow[ur, "a'"'] & W' \arrow[l, "r'"] \arrow[ur, "c'"'] & & & & \\
 & & & R \arrow[ulll, dashed, bend left, "p"] \arrow[uuull, dashed, bend right, "q"'] & Q \arrow[l, dashed, "h"'] \arrow[ulll, dashed, bend right, "k"'] & P \arrow[l, dashed, "w"']
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.4.1.4}$$

From the diagram (1.4.1.3), we then conclude that $tc'k = a'r'k$, so by (S4) there is a morphism $w : P \to Q$ in $\mathcal{S}$ such that $c'kw = cqhw$. Now, it is not hard to verify that the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & W \arrow[dl, "sr"'] \arrow[dr, "bc"] & \\
X & P \arrow[l, "s'phw"'] \arrow[u, "qhw"] \arrow[r, "bc'kw"] \arrow[d, "kw"] & Z \\
 & W' \arrow[ul, "s'r'"] \arrow[ur, "bc'"'] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

so $(W; sr, bc) \sim (W'; s'r', bc')$. A similar argument proves the case where $(U; s, a)$ is fixed, and the same result holds for right multiplicative systems.

We now verify that associativity, so let $(A; s, a) \in M^l_{X,Y}$, $(B; t, b) \in M^l_{Y,Z}$, and $(C; u, c) \in M^l_{Z,W}$.

Apply axiom (S3) three times, we obtain a diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & & & \bullet \arrow[dl, tail] \arrow[dr] & & & \\
 & & \bullet \arrow[dl, tail] \arrow[dr] & & \bullet \arrow[dl, tail] \arrow[dr] & & \\
 & A \arrow[dl, tail, "s"'] \arrow[dr, "a"] & & B \arrow[dl, tail, "t"'] \arrow[dr, "b"] & & C \arrow[dl, tail, "u"'] \arrow[dr, "c"] & \\
X & & Y & & Z & & W
\end{tikzcd}$$

which can be considered as an element of $M^l_{X,W}$ and witnesses the associativity:

$$[C;u,c] \circ ([B;t,b] \circ [A;s,a]) = ([C;u,c] \circ [B;t,c]) \circ [A;s,a]. \qquad \square$$

Definition 1.4.1.8. Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a left multiplicative system of a category $\mathcal{C}$. We define $\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ to be the (big) category with objects $\mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$, and morphisms from X to Y given by $M^l_{X,Y}/\sim$. The identity morphism of X is given by $[X;\mathrm{id}_X,\mathrm{id}_X]$, and the composition law is determined by Proposition 1.4.1.7. Moreover, we define a functor $Q^l : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ such that it is the identity on objects and sends a morphism $f : X \to Y$ to $[X;\mathrm{id}_X,f]$. Similarly, if $\mathcal{S}$ be a right multiplicative system, we can define a functor $Q^r : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}$.

It then remains to check that $(\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}, Q^l)$ (resp. $(\mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}, Q^r)$) is our desired localization of $\mathcal{C}$ with respect to $\mathcal{S}$. For this, we shall use the following lemma:

Lemma 1.4.1.9. *Let $Q : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}'$ and $G : \mathcal{C}' \to \mathcal{A}$ be two functors. Assume that for any $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C}')$, there exist $Y \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ and a morphism $s : X \to Q(Y)$ which satisfy the following two properties:*

(a) *$G(s)$ is an isomorphism;*

(b) *for any $Y' \in \mathcal{C}$ and any morphism $t : X \to Q(Y')$, there exists $Y'' \in \mathcal{C}$ and morphisms $s' : Y' \to Y''$, $t' : Y \to Y''$ in $\mathcal{C}$ such that $G(Q(s'))$ is an isomorphism and the following diagram commutes:*

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r, "s"] \arrow[d, "t"'] & Q(Y) \arrow[d, "Q(t')"] \\
Q(Y') \arrow[r, "Q(s')"] & Q(Y'')
\end{tikzcd}$$

Then the canonical map

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}',\mathcal{A})}(F,G) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{A})}(F \circ Q, G \circ Q) \tag{1.4.1.5}$$

is bijective for any functor $F : \mathcal{C}' \to \mathcal{A}$.

Proof. Let θ_1 and θ_2 be two morphisms from F to G and assume that $\theta_1(Q(Y)) = \theta_2(Q(Y))$ for all $Y \in \mathcal{C}$. For $X \in \mathcal{C}'$, choose a morphism $s : X \to Q(Y)$ such that $G(s)$ is an isomorphism, and consider the commutative diagram for $i = 1,2$:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
F(X) \arrow[r, "\theta_i(X)"] \arrow[d, "F(s)"'] & G(X) \arrow[d, "G(s)"] \\
F(Q(Y)) \arrow[r, "\theta_i(Q(Y))"] & G(Q(Y))
\end{tikzcd}$$

Since $G(s)$ is an isomorphism, we conclude from the hypothesis that $\theta_1(X) = \theta_2(X)$, so (1.4.1.5) is injective (it is given by horizontal composition).

Now let $\theta : F \circ Q \to G \circ Q$ be a morphism of functors. For each $X \in \mathcal{C}'$, we choose a morphism $s : X \to Q(Y)$ satisfying conditions (a) and (b), and define a morphism $\gamma(X) : F(X) \to G(X)$ by

$$\gamma(X) = (G(s))^{-1} \circ \theta(Y) \circ F(s).$$

Let us prove that this construction is functorial, and in particular, does not depend on the choice of the morphism $s : X \to Q(Y)$ (take $f = \mathrm{id}_X$ in the proof). Once this is done, we obtain a morphism

$\gamma : F \to G$ of functors which satisfies $\gamma(Q(Y)) = \theta(Y)$ (since we can choose $s = \mathrm{id}_{Q(Y)}$ in this case), so (1.4.1.5) is surjective.

To this end, let $f : X_1 \to X_2$ be a morphism in $\mathcal{C}'$. For any choice of morphisms $s_1 : X_1 \to Q(Y_1)$ and $s_2 : X_2 \to Q(Y_2)$ satisfying the given conditions, we can apply (b) to the morphisms $s_1 : X_1 \to Q(Y_1)$ and $s_2 \circ f : X_1 \to Q(Y_2)$; we then obtain morphisms $t_1 : Y_1 \to Y_3$ and $t_2 : Y_2 \to Y_3$ such that $G(Q(t_2))$ is an isomorphism and $Q(t_1) \circ s_1 = Q(t_2) \circ s_2 \circ f$. We then obtain a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
F(X_1) \arrow[rrrrr, "\gamma(X_1)"] \arrow[dddd, "F(f)"'] \arrow[dr, "F(s_1)"'] & & & & & G(X_1) \arrow[dddd, "G(f)"] \arrow[dl, "G(s_1)"', "\sim"] \\
& F(Q(Y_1)) \arrow[rrr, "\theta(Y_1)"] \arrow[dr, "F(Q(t_1))"] & & & G(Q(Y_1)) \arrow[dl, "G(Q(t_1))"'] & \\
& & F(Q(Y_3)) \arrow[r, "\theta(Y_3)"] & G(Q(Y_3)) & & \\
& F(Q(Y_2)) \arrow[rrr, "\theta(Y_2)"] \arrow[ur, "F(Q(t_2))"'] & & & G(Q(Y_2)) \arrow[ul, "G(Q(t_2))"] & \\
F(X_2) \arrow[rrrrr, "\gamma(X_2)"] \arrow[ur, "F(s_2)"] & & & & & G(X_2) \arrow[ul, "G(s_2)", "\sim"']
\end{tikzcd}$$

Since all the internal diagrams commute, the outer square also commutes, which proves our assertion. ◻

Theorem 1.4.1.10 (P. Gabriel, M. Zisman). *Assume that $\mathcal{S}$ is a left multiplicative system. Then $(\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}, Q^l)$ (resp. $(\mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}, Q^r)$) define a localization of $\mathcal{C}$ with respect to $\mathcal{S}$.*

Proof. It suffices to verify the universal properties for $(\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}, Q^l)$. Write $Q = Q^l$, then if $f : X \to Y$ belongs to $\mathcal{S}$, the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
& X \arrow[dl, "f"'] \arrow[d, "f"] \arrow[dr, "f"] & \\
Y \arrow[r, equal] & Y \arrow[r, equal] & Y
\end{tikzcd}$$

suggests that $[X; f, f] = [Y, \mathrm{id}_Y, \mathrm{id}_Y]$; on the other hand, the following diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
& & X \arrow[dl, equal] \arrow[dr, equal] & & & & & X \arrow[dl, equal] \arrow[dr, equal] & & \\
& X \arrow[dl, equal] \arrow[dr, "f"] & & X \arrow[dl, "f"'] \arrow[dr, equal] & & & X \arrow[dl, "f"'] \arrow[dr, equal] & & X \arrow[dl, equal] \arrow[dr, "f"] & \\
X & & Y & & X & X & & Y & & X
\end{tikzcd}$$

proves that $[X; f, \mathrm{id}_X] = [X; \mathrm{id}_X, f]^{-1}$, so the functor Q sends the elements in $\mathcal{S}$ to isomorphisms.

Now consider a functor $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}$ such that $F(s)$ is an isomorphism for $s \in \mathcal{S}$. For any $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}) = \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$, we define $F_{\mathcal{S}}(X) = F(X)$, and consider the morphisms

$$F_{\mathcal{S}} : \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}}(X, Y) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(F(X), F(Y)), \quad [U; s, a] \mapsto F(a)(F(s))^{-1}.$$

It is clear that $F_{\mathcal{S}}$ sends identities to identities, and by applying F to the diagram (1.4.1.2), we see that $F_{\mathcal{S}}$ preserves compositions, so we obtain a functor $F_{\mathcal{S}} : \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}} \to \mathcal{A}$. It is clear that $F_{\mathcal{S}} \circ Q \cong F$, and $F_{\mathcal{S}}$ is unique up to isomorphisms.

Finally, with the notations of Lemma 1.4.1.9, we can choose $Y \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$ such that $X = Q(Y)$ and $s = \mathrm{id}_{Q(Y)}$. Then any morphism $t : Q(Y) \to Q(Y')$ is given by morphisms

$$Y \xrightarrow{t'} Y'' \xleftarrow{s'} Y'$$

and the diagram in Lemma 1.4.1.9 commutes. ◻

Remark 1.4.1.11. If $\mathcal{S}$ is both a left multiplicative system and right multiplicative system, then by Proposition 1.4.1.1, the two localizations of $\mathcal{C}$ are equivalent, and we simply denote it by $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$.

Corollary 1.4.1.12. *Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a left (resp. right) multiplicative system, then two morphisms $f, g : X \rightrightarrows Y$ satisfy $Q^l(f) = Q^l(g)$ (resp. $Q^r(f) = Q^r(g)$) if and only if there exists $s \in \mathcal{S}$ such that $fs = gs$ (resp. $sf = sg$).*

Proof. Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a left multiplicative system. Then if $Q^l(f) = Q^l(g)$, we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
& X \arrow[dr, "f"] & \\
X \arrow[ur, equal] \arrow[dr, equal] & U \arrow[l, "s"'] \arrow[u] \arrow[d] \arrow[r, "a"] & Y \\
& X \arrow[ur, "g"'] &
\end{tikzcd}$$

It then follows that $fs = a = gs$, whence the corollary. □

Corollary 1.4.1.13. *Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a left (resp. right) multiplicative system. Then the functor Q^l (resp. Q^r) sends monomorphisms to monomorphisms, and epimorphisms to epimorphisms.*

Proof. We only consider a left multiplicative system $\mathcal{S}$. Let $f : X \to Y$ be a monomorphism in $\mathcal{C}$ and $\alpha, \beta : Q^l(W) \to Q^l(X)$ be two morphisms in $\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ such that $(Q^l(f))\alpha = (Q^l(f))\beta$. Then by (S2) and (S3), we can write $\alpha = (U; s, a)$ and $\beta = (U; s, b)$, and it then follows that $Q^l(fa) = Q^l(fb)$, so by Corollary 1.4.1.12, there exists $t \in \mathcal{S}$ such that $fat = fbt$, whence $at = bt$ and $\alpha = \beta$. □

Remark 1.4.1.14. We note that the category $\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}$) may not be small, since the collection $M^l_{X,Y}$ (resp. $M^r_{X,Y}$) is too big. However, if the collection $\mathcal{S}$ has a cofinal subset, then by Lemma 1.4.1.6, we can restrict the inductive limit to this set, and then $\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}$) will be small. This is the case if $\mathcal{C}$ itself is already small.

We now give some properties of the localization functor Q. For this, assume that $\mathcal{S}$ is a left (resp. right) multiplicative system and let $X \in \mathcal{C}$. We define a functor

$$\theta_{/X} : \mathcal{S}_{/X} \to \mathcal{C}_{Q(X)/} \quad (\text{resp. } \theta_{X/} : \mathcal{S}_{X/} \to \mathcal{C}_{/Q(X)})$$

by associating a morphism $s : Y \to X$ in $\mathcal{S}_{/X}$ (resp. a morphism $s : X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{S}_{X/}$) with the morphism $Q(s)^{-1} : Q(X) \to Q(Y)$ in $\mathcal{C}_{Q(X)/}$ (resp. the morphism $Q(s)^{-1} : Q(Y) \to Q(X)$ in $\mathcal{C}_{Q(X)/}$).

Lemma 1.4.1.15. *Assume that $\mathcal{S}$ is a left (resp. right) multiplicative system and let $X \in \mathcal{C}$. Then the functor $\theta^{\mathrm{op}}_{/X}$ (resp. $\theta_{X/}$) is cofinal.*

Proof. We only consider right multiplicative systems. □

Proposition 1.4.1.16. *Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a left (resp. right) multiplicative system and $Q : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ be the corresponding localization functor.*

(a) *The functor Q is left (resp. right) exact.*

(b) *Let $\alpha : I \to \mathcal{C}$ be a projective (resp. inductive) system in $\mathcal{C}$ indexed by a finite category I. Assume that $\varprojlim \alpha$ (resp. $\varinjlim \alpha$) exists in $\mathcal{C}$, then $\varprojlim(Q \circ \alpha)$ (resp. $\varinjlim(Q \circ \alpha)$) exists in $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ and is isomorphic to $Q(\varprojlim \alpha)$ (resp. $Q(\varinjlim \alpha)$).*

(c) *Assume that $\mathcal{C}$ admits kernels (resp. cokernels). Then $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ admits kernels (resp. cokernels) and Q commutes with kernels (resp. cokernels).*

(d) *Assume that $\mathcal{C}$ admits finite products (resp. coproducts). Then $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ admits finite products (resp. coproducts) and Q commutes with finite products (resp. coproducts).*

(e) *If $\mathcal{C}$ admits finite projective (resp. inductive) limits, then so does $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$.*

Proposition 1.4.1.17. *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category, $\mathcal{I}$ be a full subcategory, $\mathcal{S}$ be a left (resp. right) multiplicative system in $\mathcal{C}$, and $\mathcal{T}$ be the family of morphisms in $\mathcal{I}$ which belong to $\mathcal{S}$.*

(a) *Assume that $\mathcal{T}$ is a left (resp. right) multiplicative system in $\mathcal{I}$. Then there is a well-defined functor $\mathcal{I}^l_{\mathcal{T}} \to \mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{I}^r_{\mathcal{T}} \to \mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}$).*

(b) *Assume that for every $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{S}$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$ (resp. $X \in \mathcal{I}$), there exist a morphism $g : W \to X$ with $W \in \mathcal{I}$ and $fg \in \mathcal{S}$ (resp. a morphism $g : Y \to W$ with $W \in \mathcal{I}$ and $gf \in \mathcal{S}$). Then $\mathcal{T}$ is a left (resp. right) multiplicative system and the functor $\mathcal{I}^l_{\mathcal{T}} \to \mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{I}^r_{\mathcal{T}} \to \mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}$) is fully faithful.*

Proof. Assertion (a) is clear from the definition, and as for (b), it is easy to verify that $\mathcal{T}$ is a left multiplicative system under the corresonding assumption. For $X \in \mathcal{I}$, we define the category $\mathcal{T}_{/X}$ as the full subcategory of $\mathcal{S}_{/X}$ whose objects are morphisms $s : Y \to X$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$. The hypothesis in (b) then amounts to saying that the functor $\mathcal{T}_{/X} \to \mathcal{S}_{/X}$ is cofinal, so the result follows from **??**. □

Corollary 1.4.1.18. *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category, $\mathcal{I}$ a full subcategory, $\mathcal{S}$ be a left (resp. right) multiplicative system in $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{T}$ the family of morphisms in $\mathcal{I}$ which belong to $\mathcal{S}$. Assume that for any $X \in \mathcal{C}$ there exists a morphism $s : I \to X$ with $I \in \mathcal{I}$ and $s \in \mathcal{S}$ (resp. a morphism $s : X \to I$ with $I \in \mathcal{I}$ and $s \in \mathcal{S}$). Then $\mathcal{T}$ is a left (resp. right) multiplicative system and $\mathcal{I}^l_{\mathcal{T}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{I}^r_{\mathcal{T}}$) is equivalent to $\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}$).*

Proof. The natural functor $\mathcal{I}^l_{\mathcal{T}} \to \mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{I}^r_{\mathcal{T}} \to \mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}$) is fully faithful by Proposition 1.4.1.17, and essentially surjective by hypothesis. □

Theorem 1.4.1.19. *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a pre-additive category and $\mathcal{S}$ be a left (resp. right) multiplicative system.*

(a) *The localization $\mathcal{C}^l_{\mathcal{S}}$ (resp. $\mathcal{C}^r_{\mathcal{S}}$) has a canonical structure of a pre-additive category, so that Q^l (resp. Q^r) is an additive functor.*

(b) *If $\mathcal{C}$ is additive and $\mathcal{S}$ be a multiplicative system, then $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ is an additive category.*

The same result is true if we replace additive by k-linear, where k is a commutative ring.

Proof. As for (a), it suffices to consider right multiplicative systems. We now define an addition for the Hom set of $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$. If $f, g \in \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}}(X, Y)$, then, since $\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}_{/X}$ is filtrant, there exist $s : U \rightarrowtail X$ and $a_1, a_2 : U \to Y$ such that $f = [U; s, a_1]$ and $g = [U; s, a_2]$. We can therefore define $f + g$ by

$$f + g := [U; s, a_1 + a_2] \in \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}}(X, Y).$$

In particular, the zero morphism can be written as $[U; s, 0]$, and $-[U; s, a] = [U; s, -a]$. It is then a simple matter to show that this definition is independent of the choices of a_1 and a_2, which follows easily from the filtrant property of $\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}_{/X}$. Finally, with this definition, it is then easy to check that Q is an additive functor, and the second assertion follows from Proposition 1.4.1.16. □

1.4.2 Kan extensions along a localization

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category, $\mathcal{S}$ a (right, say) multiplicative system in $\mathcal{C}$ and $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}$ a functor. We consider the existence of the following factorization diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathcal{C} \arrow[d, "Q"'] \arrow[dr, bend left, "F"] & \\ \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}} \arrow[r, dashed, "\exists ?"] & \mathcal{A} \end{tikzcd}$$

In general, F does not send morphisms in $\mathcal{S}$ to isomorphisms in $\mathcal{A}$, so it does not factorize through $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$. It is however possible in some cases to define a localization of F as a "best approximation", in the following sense:

Definition 1.4.2.1. Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a family of morphisms in $\mathcal{C}$ and assume that the localization $Q : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ exists.

(a) We say that F is **right localizable** if the left Kan extension $\mathrm{Lan}_Q F$ of F with respect to Q exists. In such a case, we say that $\mathrm{Lan}_Q F$ is a **right localization** of F and we denote it by $R_{\mathcal{S}}F$. In other words, the **right localization** of F is a functor $R_{\mathcal{S}}F : \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}} \to \mathcal{A}$ together with a morphism of functors $\eta : F \to R_{\mathcal{S}}F \circ Q$ such that for any functor $G : \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}} \to \mathcal{A}$, the map

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}, \mathcal{A})}(R_{\mathcal{S}}F, G) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A})}(F, G \circ Q)$$

is bijective (This map is given by composing with η).

(b) We say that F is universally right localizable if for any functor $K : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$, the functor $K \circ F$ is localizable and $R_{\mathcal{S}}(K \circ F) \xrightarrow{\sim} K \circ R_{\mathcal{S}} F$.

We can similarly define left localizations of F by right Kan extensions, and consider universally left localizable functors. That is, the left localization of F is a functor $L_{\mathcal{S}}F : \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}} \to \mathcal{A}$ together with a morphism $\varepsilon : L_{\mathcal{S}}F \circ Q \to F$ such that for any functor $G : \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}} \to \mathcal{A}$, ε induces a bijection

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}},\mathcal{A})}(G, L_{\mathcal{S}}F) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{A})}(G \circ Q, F).$$

One should be aware that even if F admits both a right and a left localization, the two localizations are not isomorphic in general. However, when the localization $Q : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ exists and F is right and left localizable, the canonical morphisms of functors $L_{\mathcal{S}}F \circ Q \to F \to R_{\mathcal{S}}F \circ Q$ together with the isomorphism $\mathrm{Hom}(L_{\mathcal{S}}F \circ Q, R_{\mathcal{S}}F \circ Q) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(L_{\mathcal{S}}F, R_{\mathcal{S}}F)$ in (L3) gives a canonical morphism of functors $L_{\mathcal{S}}F \to R_{\mathcal{S}}F$. From now on, we shall concentrate on right localizations.

Proposition 1.4.2.2. *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a category, $\mathcal{I}$ be a full subcategory, $\mathcal{S}$ be a left (resp. right) multiplicative system in $\mathcal{S}$, $\mathcal{T}$ be the family of morphisms in $\mathcal{I}$ which belong to $\mathcal{S}$. Let $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}$ be a functor. Assume that the following "resolution condition" is satisfied:*

(a) *for any $X \in \mathcal{C}$, there exists $s : I \to X$ (resp. $s : X \to I$) with $I \in \mathcal{I}$ and $s \in \mathcal{S}$;*

(b) *for any $t \in \mathcal{T}$, $F(t)$ is an isomorphism.*

Then F is universally left (resp. right) localizable and the composition

$$\mathcal{I} \longrightarrow \mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{Q} \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}} \xrightarrow{L_{\mathcal{S}}F \text{ or } R_{\mathcal{S}}F} \mathcal{A}$$

is isomorphic to the restriction of F to $\mathcal{I}$. Moreover, we have canonical isomorphisms

$$(L_{\mathcal{S}}F)(Q(X)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \varprojlim_{[Y \to X] \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}_{/X})} F(Y), \tag{1.4.2.1}$$

$$(R_{\mathcal{S}}F)(Q(X)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \varinjlim_{[X \to Y] \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{S}_{X/})} F(Y). \tag{1.4.2.2}$$

and the morphism $\varepsilon : L_{\mathcal{S}}F \circ Q \to F$ (resp. $\eta : F \to R_{\mathcal{S}}F \circ Q$) is given by projecting to the term $F(X)$ corresponding to the identity morphism $\mathrm{id}_X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}_{/X})$ (resp. $\mathrm{id}_X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{S}_{X/})$).

Proof. It suffices to consider right multiplicative systems. Denote by $\iota : \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{C}$ the natural functor. By condition (a) and Corollary 1.4.1.18, $\iota_Q : \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{T}} \to \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ is an equivalence, and condition (b) implies that the localization $F_{\mathcal{T}}$ of $F \circ \iota$ exists. We consider the solid diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & \mathcal{C} \arrow[dr, "Q_{\mathcal{S}}"] \arrow[drr, bend left, "F"] & & \\
\mathcal{I} \arrow[ur, "\iota"] \arrow[dr, "Q_{\mathcal{T}}"'] & & \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}} \arrow[r, dashed, "RF"] & \mathcal{A} \\
 & \mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{T}} \arrow[ur, "\iota_Q"] \arrow[urr, bend right, "F_{\mathcal{T}}"'] & &
\end{tikzcd}$$

Denote by ι_Q^{-1} a quasi-inverse of ι_Q and set $RF = F_{\mathcal{T}} \circ \iota_Q^{-1}$. Then the above diagram commutes, except the triangle $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}, \mathcal{A})$. We now prove that RF is the right localization of F.

Let $G : \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}} \to \mathcal{A}$ be a functor; we have the chain of a morphism and isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C},\mathcal{A})}(F, G \circ Q_{\mathcal{S}}) &\xrightarrow{\lambda} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{I},\mathcal{A})}(F \circ \iota, G \circ Q_{\mathcal{S}} \circ \iota) \\
&\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{I},\mathcal{A})}(F_{\mathcal{T}} \circ Q_{\mathcal{T}}, G \circ \iota_Q \circ Q_{\mathcal{T}}) \\
&\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{T}},\mathcal{A})}(F_{\mathcal{T}}, G \circ \iota_Q) \\
&\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}},\mathcal{A})}(F_{\mathcal{T}} \circ \iota_Q^{-1}, G) \\
&\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Fun}(\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}},\mathcal{A})}(RF, G).
\end{aligned} \tag{1.4.2.3}$$

The second isomorphism follows from the fact that $Q_{\mathcal{T}}$ satisfies axiom (L3). To conclude, it remains to prove that the morphism λ is bijective. Let us check that Lemma 1.4.1.9 applies to $\iota : \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{C}$ and $Q_{\mathcal{S}} : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$, and hence to $\iota : \mathcal{I} \to \mathcal{C}$ and $G \circ Q_{\mathcal{S}} : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}$. Let $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$; by hypothesis, there exists $Y \in \mathcal{I}$ and $s : X \to \iota(Y)$ with $s \in \mathcal{S}$. Then $F(s)$ is an isomorphism and condition (a) of Lemma 1.4.1.9 is satisfied. On the other hand, condition (b) follows from axiom (S3') and the fact that ι is fully faithful. Finally, to see that the limit of (1.4.2.2) exists, we can assume that $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{I})$, but the limit is then isomorphic to $F(X)$, since id_X is initial in $\mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{S}_{X/})$. In view of the general construction of $\mathrm{Lan}_Q F$ and Lemma 1.4.1.15, it follows that $R_{\mathcal{S}}F$ is isomorphic to the limit in (1.4.2.2).

If $K : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ is another functor, $K \circ F(t)$ will be an isomorphism for any $t \in \mathcal{T}$. Hence, $K \circ F$ is localizable and we have

$$R_{\mathcal{S}}(K \circ F) \cong (K \circ F)_{\mathcal{T}} \circ \iota_Q^{-1} \cong K \circ F_{\mathcal{T}} \circ \iota_Q^{-1} \cong K \circ R_{\mathcal{S}}F. \qquad \square$$

Corollary 1.4.2.3. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a category which admits small filtrant inductive limits. Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a left (resp. right) multiplicative system and assume that for each $X \in \mathcal{C}$, the category $\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}_{/X}$ (resp. $\mathcal{S}_{X/}$) is cofinally small.*

(a) *$\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ is a $\mathcal{U}$-category.*

(b) *The functor $Q^\star$ admits a right adjoint ${}_\star Q$ (resp. left adjoint functor $Q_\star$).*

(c) *Any functor $F : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{A}$ is left (resp. right) localizable and*

$$(L_{\mathcal{S}}F)(Q(X)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \varprojlim_{[Y \rightarrowtail X] \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{S}^{\mathrm{op}}_{/X})} F(Y), \quad (R_{\mathcal{S}}F)(Q(X)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \varinjlim_{[X \rightarrowtail Y] \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{S}_{X/})} F(Y).$$

Proof. Assertion (a) is obvious and (b), (c) follow from Lemma 1.4.1.15, since we may apply Proposition 1.4.2.2 to construct ${}_\star Q$ (resp. $Q_\star$). $\square$

1.4.3 Triangulated categories

Triangulated categories are additive categories with a collection of distingushied triangles. They arise naturally from the derived category of an abelian category and is important for the study of properties of derived categories. To begin with, we first consider categories with a translation functor.

Definition 1.4.3.1. A **category with translation** $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ is a category $\mathcal{D}$ endowed with an equivalence of categories $T : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}$. The functor T is called the **translation functor**.

- A functor of categories with translation $F : (\mathcal{D}, T) \to (\mathcal{D}', T')$ is a functor $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'$ together with an isomorphism $F \circ T \cong T' \circ F$. If $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{D}'$ are additive categories and F is additive, we say that F is a functor of additive categories with translation.
- Let $F, F' : (\mathcal{D}, T) \to (\mathcal{D}', T')$ be two functors of categories with translation. A morphism $\theta : F \to F'$ of functors of categories with translation is a morphism of functors such that the diagram below commutes

$$\begin{tikzcd} F \circ T \arrow[r, "\theta \circ T"] \arrow[d, "\sim"'] & F' \circ T \arrow[d, "\sim"] \\ T' \circ F \arrow[r, "T' \circ \theta"] & T' \circ F' \end{tikzcd}$$

- A subcategory with translation $(\mathcal{D}', T')$ of $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ is a category with translation such that $\mathcal{D}'$ is a subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$ and the translation functor T' is the restriction of T.
- Let $(\mathcal{D}, T)$, $(\mathcal{D}', T')$ and $(\mathcal{D}'', T'')$ be additive categories with translation. A bifunctor of additive categories with translation $F : \mathcal{D} \times \mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{D}''$ is an additive bifunctor endowed with functorial isomorphisms

$$\theta_{X,Y} : F(T(X), Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} T''(F(X,Y)), \quad \lambda_{X,Y} : F(X, T'(Y)) \xrightarrow{\sim} T''(F(X,Y))$$

for $(X, Y) \in \mathcal{D} \times \mathcal{D}'$ such that the diagram below anti-commutes:

$$\begin{tikzcd} F(T(X), T'(Y)) \arrow[r, "\theta_{X,T'(Y)}"] \arrow[d, "\lambda_{T(X),Y}"'] & T''(F(X, T'(Y))) \arrow[d, "T''(\lambda_{X,Y})"] \\ T''(F(T(X), Y)) \arrow[r, "T''(\theta_{X,Y})"] & T''^2(F(X,Y)) \end{tikzcd}$$

If $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ is a category with translation, we shall denote by T^{-1} a quasi-inverse of T. Then T^n is well defined for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. These functors are unique up to unique isomorphism. If there is no risk of confusion, we shall write $\mathcal{D}$ instead of $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ and $X[1]$ (resp. $X[-1]$) instead of $T(X)$ (resp. $T^{-1}(X)$).

Example 1.4.3.2. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an additive category and $\mathrm{Ch}(A)$ be the category of chain complexes of $\mathcal{A}$. Then we have the shift functor $T : X \mapsto X[1]$ defined by $X[1]^n = X^{n+1}$ and $d[1]^n = -d^{n+1}$, so $(\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A}), T)$ is an additive category with translation.

Definition 1.4.3.3. Let $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ be an additive category with translations. A **triangle** in $\mathcal{D}$ is a sequence of morphisms

$$X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{h} X[1]$$

A morphism of triangles is a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, "\alpha"] & Y \arrow[r, "g"] \arrow[d, "\beta"] & Z \arrow[r, "h"] \arrow[d, "\gamma"] & X[1] \arrow[d, "\alpha[1]"] \\ X' \arrow[r, "f'"] & Y' \arrow[r, "g'"] & Z' \arrow[r, "h'"] & X'[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

Remark 1.4.3.4. Let $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ be a k-linear category with translations and

$$X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{h} X[1]$$

be a triangle. Let $\varepsilon, \zeta, \eta \in k^\times$. If $\varepsilon\zeta\eta = 1$, then the original triangle is isomorphic to the following:

$$X \xrightarrow{\varepsilon f} Y \xrightarrow{\zeta g} Z \xrightarrow{\eta h} X[1]$$

In fact, we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, equal] & Y \arrow[r, "g"] \arrow[d, "\varepsilon"] & Z \arrow[r, "h"] \arrow[d, "\varepsilon\zeta"] & X[1] \arrow[d, "\varepsilon\zeta\eta"] \\ X \arrow[r, "\varepsilon f"] & Y \arrow[r, "\zeta g"] & Z \arrow[r, "\eta h"] & X[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

Definition 1.4.3.5. A **triangulated category** is an additive category $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ with translation endowed with a family of triangles, called **distinguished triangles**, satisfying the axioms below:

(TR0) A triangle isomorphic to a distinguished triangle is a distinguished triangle.

(TR1) The triangle $X \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_X} X \to 0 \to X[1]$ is a distinguished triangle.

(TR2) For any morphism $f : X \to Y$, there exists a distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z \to X[1]$.

(TR3) A triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{h} X[1]$ is a distinguished triangle if and only if its "rotation"

$$Y \xrightarrow{-g} Z \xrightarrow{-h} X[1] \xrightarrow{-f[1]} Y[1]$$

is a distinguished triangle.

(TR4) Given a solid diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\alpha"] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\beta"] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed, "\gamma"] & X[1] \arrow[d, dashed, "\alpha[1]"] \\ X' \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r] & Z' \arrow[r] & X'[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

with both rows being distinguished triangles, there exists a morphism $\gamma : Z \to Z'$ giving rise to a morphisms of distinguished triangles.

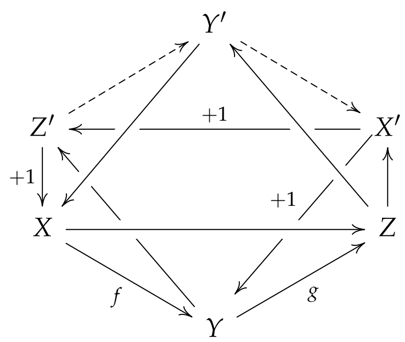
(TR5) Given three distinguished triangles

$$X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z' \to X[1],$$
$$Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \to X' \to Y[1],$$
$$X \xrightarrow{gf} Z \to Y' \to X[1],$$

there exists a distinguished triangle $Z' \to Y' \to X' \to Z'[1]$ making the following diagram commutative:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, equal] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "g"] & Z' \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed] & X[1] \arrow[d, equal] \\
X \arrow[r, "gf"] \arrow[d, "f"] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & Y' \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed] & X[1] \arrow[d] \\
Y \arrow[r, "g"] \arrow[d] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X' \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & Y[1] \arrow[d] \\
Z' \arrow[r, dashed] & Y' \arrow[r, dashed] & X' \arrow[r, dashed] & Z'[1]
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.4.3.1}$$

Diagram (1.4.3.1) is often called the **octahedron diagram**. Indeed, it can be written using the vertices of an octahedron:



Here we use $X' \xrightarrow{+1} Y$ to denote a morphism $X' \to Y[1]$.

An additive category $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ satisfying (TR0)–(TR4) is called a **pretriangulated category**. Note that the morphism γ in (TR4) is not unique, and is unique up to *non-unique* isomorphisms.

Definition 1.4.3.6. A **triangulated functor** of triangulated categories $F : (\mathcal{D}, T) \to (\mathcal{D}', T')$ is a functor of additive categories with translation sending distinguished triangles to distinguished triangles. If moreover F is an equivalence of categories, it is called an **equivalence of triangulated categories**. If $F, F' : (\mathcal{D}, T) \to (\mathcal{D}', T')$ are triangulated functors, a morphism $\theta : F \to F'$ of triangulated functors is a morphism of functors of additive categories with translation.

A triangulated subcategory $(\mathcal{D}', T')$ of $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ is an additive subcategory with translation of $\mathcal{D}$ (i.e., the functor T' is the restriction of T) such that it is triangulated and that the inclusion functor is triangulated.

Remark 1.4.3.7. A triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{h} X[1]$ is called **anti-distinguished** if the triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{-h} X[1]$ is distinguished. Then $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ endowed with the family of anti-distinguished triangles is triangulated. If we denote by $(\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{ant}}, T)$ this triangulated category, then $(\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{ant}}, T)$ and $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ are equivalent as triangulated categories.

Remark 1.4.3.8. Consider the contravariant functor $\mathrm{op} : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}}$, and define

$$T^{\mathrm{op}} = \mathrm{op} \circ T^{-1} \circ \mathrm{op} : \mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}}$$

(we use the fact that $\mathrm{op}^2 = \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$.) A triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{h} T^{\mathrm{op}}(X)$ in $\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}}$ is called distinguished if its image

$$Z^{\mathrm{op}} \xrightarrow{g^{\mathrm{op}}} Y^{\mathrm{op}} \xrightarrow{f^{\mathrm{op}}} X^{\mathrm{op}} \xrightarrow{T(h^{\mathrm{op}})} T(Z^{\mathrm{op}})$$

by op is distinguished. With this definition, it is easy to check that $(\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}}, T^{\mathrm{op}})$ is a triangulated category.

Proposition 1.4.3.9. *If $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \to X[1]$ is a distinguished triangle, then $gf = 0$.*

Proof. Applying (TR1) and (TR4) we get a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r, equal] \arrow[d, equal] & X \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "f"] & 0 \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X[1] \arrow[d, equal] \\
X \arrow[r, "f"] & Y \arrow[r, "g"] & Z \arrow[r] & X[1]
\end{tikzcd}$$

Then gf factorizes through 0. $\square$

Definition 1.4.3.10. Let $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ be a pretriangulated category and $\mathcal{C}$ an abelian category. An additive functor $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{C}$ is called **cohomological** if for any distinguished triangle $X \to Y \to Z \to X[1]$ in $\mathcal{D}$, the sequence $F(X) \to F(Y) \to F(Z)$ is exact in $\mathcal{C}$.

If F is a cohomological functor $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{C}$, then for any distinguished triangle $X \to Y \to Z \to X[1]$ in $\mathcal{D}$, by rotating the triangle by (TR3), we obtain a long exact sequence

$$\cdots \longrightarrow F(Z[-1]) \longrightarrow F(X) \longrightarrow F(Y) \longrightarrow F(Z) \longrightarrow F(X[1]) \longrightarrow \cdots$$

A basic example of cohomological functors is the Hom functor:

Proposition 1.4.3.11. *Let $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ be a pretriangulated category and S be an object of $\mathcal{D}$. Then the functors $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(S, -)$ and $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(-, S)$ are cohomological.*

Proof. Let $X \to Y \to Z \to X[1]$ be a distinguished triangle. We want to show that

$$\mathrm{Hom}(S, X) \xrightarrow{f_*} \mathrm{Hom}(S, Y) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(S, Z)$$

is exact, i.e. for any morphism $\varphi : S \to Y$ such that $g \circ \varphi = 0$, there exists a morphism $\psi : S \to X$ such that $\varphi = f \circ \psi$. This is equivalent to say that the solid diagram below may be completed:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
S \arrow[r, equal] \arrow[d, dashed] & S \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & 0 \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & S[1] \arrow[d, dashed] \\
X \arrow[r, "f"] & Y \arrow[r, "g"] & Z \arrow[r] & X[1]
\end{tikzcd}$$

and this follows from (TR4) and (TR3). By replacing $\mathcal{D}$ with $\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}}$, we obtain the assertion for $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(-, S)$. $\square$

Corollary 1.4.3.12. *For a distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to 0 \to X[1]$ in a pretriangulated category, f must be an isomorphism.*

Proof. For every object S of $\mathcal{D}$, by Proposition 1.4.3.11 we have an exact sequence

$$\mathrm{Hom}(S, 0[-1]) = 0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(S, X) \xrightarrow{f_*} \mathrm{Hom}(S, Y) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(S, 0) = 0$$

so f_* is an isomorphism, which means f is an isomorphism. $\square$

Proposition 1.4.3.13. *Let $(\mathcal{D}, T)$ be a pretriangulated category and consider a morphism of distinguished triangle:*

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\alpha"] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\beta"] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed, "\gamma"] & X[1] \arrow[d, dashed, "\alpha[1]"] \\ X' \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r] & Z' \arrow[r] & X'[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

If two of α, β, γ are isomorphisms, then so is the third one.

Proof. By rotating the triangle, we may assume that α, γ are isomorphisms. To show that β is an isomorphism, it suffices to show that for any object S of $\mathcal{D}$, the map $\beta_* : \mathrm{Hom}(S, Y) \to \mathrm{Hom}(S, Y')$ is an isomorphism. Now by Proposition 1.4.3.11 we have a commutative diagram with exact rows:

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathrm{Hom}(S, Z[-1]) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\sim"] & \mathrm{Hom}(S, X) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\sim"] & \mathrm{Hom}(S, Y) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\beta_*"] & \mathrm{Hom}(S, Z) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\sim"] & \mathrm{Hom}(S, X[1]) \arrow[d, "\sim"] \\ \mathrm{Hom}(S, Z'[-1]) \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}(S, X') \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}(S, Y') \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}(S, Z') \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}(S, X'[1]) \end{tikzcd}$$

so the claim follows from five lemma. □

Corollary 1.4.3.14. *Let $\mathcal{D}'$ be a full pretriangulated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$.*

(a) *Consider a triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z \to X[1]$ in $\mathcal{D}'$ and assume that this triangle is distinguished in $\mathcal{D}$. Then it is distinguished in $\mathcal{D}'$.*

(b) *Consider a distinguished triangle $X \to Y \to Z \to X[1]$ in $\mathcal{D}$ with X, Y in $\mathcal{D}'$. Then Z is isomorphic to an object of $\mathcal{D}'$.*

Proof. In the situation of (a), there exists a distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z' \to X[1]$ in $\mathcal{D}'$, and $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z \to X[1]$ is isomorphic to it in $\mathcal{D}$ in view of axiom (TR4) and Proposition 1.4.3.13. The second assertion follows from (a). □

Corollary 1.4.3.15. *The distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z \to X[1]$ in (TR2) is unique up to (non-canonical) isomorphisms.*

Proof. For distinguished triangles $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z \to X[1]$ and $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z \to X[1]$, axiom (TR4) gives a morphism γ such that the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed, "\gamma"] & X[1] \arrow[d, equal] \\ X' \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r] & Z' \arrow[r] & X'[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

is commutative. It then suffices to apply Proposition 1.4.3.13. □

By Corollary 1.4.3.15, we see that the object Z given in (TR2) is unique up to isomorphism. As already mentioned, the fact that this isomorphism is not unique is the source of many difficulties (e.g., gluing problems in sheaf theory). Let us give a criterion which ensures, in some very special cases, the uniqueness of the third term of a distinguished triangle.

Proposition 1.4.3.16. *In the situation of (TR4), assume that $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(Y, X') = 0$ and $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(X[1], Y') = 0$. Then γ is unique.*

Proof. We may replace α and β by the zero morphisms and prove that in this case, γ is zero:

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "0"] & Y \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, "0"] & Z \arrow[r, "g"] \arrow[d, "\gamma"] & X[1] \arrow[d, "0"] \\ X' \arrow[r, "f'"] & Y' \arrow[r, "g'"] & Z' \arrow[r, "h'"] & X'[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

Since $h'\gamma = 0$, by Proposition 1.4.3.11 the morphism γ factorizes through g', i.e. there exists $u : Z \to Y'$ with $\gamma = g' \circ u$. Similarly, since $\gamma g = 0$, γ factorizes through h so there exists $v : X[1] \to Z'$ with $\gamma = vh$. By (TR4), there then exists a morphism $w : Y[1] \to X'[1]$ defining a morphism

$$\begin{tikzcd} Y \arrow[r, "g"] & Z \arrow[r, "h"] \arrow[dl, "u"'] & X[1] \arrow[r, "-f[1]"] \arrow[dl, "v"'] & Y[1] \arrow[dl, "w"'] \\ Y' \arrow[r, "g'"] & Z' \arrow[r, "h'"] & X'[1] \arrow[r] & Y'[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

By hypothesis we have $w = 0$, so v factorizes through Y', and this implies $v = 0$ by our hypothesis, whence $\gamma = 0$. □

Proposition 1.4.3.17. *Let $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'$ be a triangulated functor between pretriangulated categories. Then F is exact.*

Proof. Since $F^{\mathrm{op}} : \mathcal{D}'^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}}$ is also a triangulated functor between pretriangulated categories, it suffices to prove that F is left exact, that is, for any $X \in \mathcal{D}'$, the category $\mathcal{D}_{/X}$ is filtrant.

The category $\mathcal{D}_{/X}$ is nonempty since it contains the object $0 \to X$, and if (Y_1, s_1) and (Y_2, s_2) are two objects of $\mathcal{D}_{/X}$ with $Y_i \in \mathcal{D}$ and $s_i : F(Y_i) \to X$, $i = 1, 2$, we obtain a morphism $s : F(Y_1 \oplus Y_2) \to X$, whence morphisms $(Y_i, s_i) \to (Y_1 \oplus Y_2, s)$ for $i = 1, 2$. Finally, consider morphisms $f, g : (Y, s) \rightrightarrows (Y', s')$ in $\mathcal{D}_{/X}$. We can embed $f - g : Y \to Y'$ into a distinguished triangle

$$Y \xrightarrow{f-g} Y' \xrightarrow{h} Z \longrightarrow Y[1]$$

Since $s'F(f) = s'F(g)$, Proposition 1.4.3.11 implies that the morphism $s' : F(Y') \to X$ factorizes as $F(Y') \to F(Z) \xrightarrow{t} X$, so the compositions $(Y, s) \rightrightarrows (Y', s') \to (Z, t)$ coincide, and this proves that $\mathcal{D}_{/X}$ is filtrant. □

Proposition 1.4.3.18. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a pretriangulated category which admits direct sums (resp. products) indexed by a set I. Then direct sums indexed by I commute with the translation functor T, and a direct sum (resp. products) of distinguished triangles indexed by I is a distinguished triangle.*

Proof. The first assertion is obvious since T is an equivalence of categories. Now let $D_i : X_i \to Y_i \to Z_i \to X_i[1]$ be a family of distinguished triangles indexed by I, and D be the triangle

$$\bigoplus_i D_i : \bigoplus_i X_i \to \bigoplus_i Y_i \to \bigoplus_i Z_i \to \bigoplus_i X_i[1].$$

By (TR2) there exists a distinguished triangle $D' : \bigoplus_i X_i \to \bigoplus_i Y_i \to Z \to (\bigoplus_i X_i)[1]$, and by (TR3) there exists morphisms of triangles $D_i \to D'$ such that they induces a morphism $D \to D'$. Let $S \in \mathcal{D}$, we show that the morphism $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(D', S) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(D, S)$ is an isomorphism, which then implies the isomorphism $D \cong D'$. Consider the commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathrm{Hom}((\bigoplus_i Y_i)[1], S) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \mathrm{Hom}((\bigoplus_i X_i)[1], S) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \mathrm{Hom}(Z, S) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \mathrm{Hom}(\bigoplus_i Y_i, S) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \mathrm{Hom}(\bigoplus_i X_i, S) \arrow[d] \\ \mathrm{Hom}(\bigoplus_i Y_i[1], S) \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}(\bigoplus_i X_i[1], S) \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}(\bigoplus_i Z_i, S) \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}(\bigoplus_i Y_i, S) \arrow[r] & \mathrm{Hom}(\bigoplus_i X_i, S) \end{tikzcd}$$

The first row is exact since the functor Hom is cohomological, and the second row is isomorphic to

$$\prod_i \mathrm{Hom}(Y_i[1], S) \to \prod_i \mathrm{Hom}(X_i[1], S) \to \prod_i \mathrm{Hom}(Z_i, S) \to \prod_i \mathrm{Hom}(Y_i, S) \to \prod_i \mathrm{Hom}(X_i, S)$$

Since the functor $\prod_i$ is exact on **Ab**, this complex is exact. Now the vertical arrows except the middle one are isomorphisms, so the middle one is an isomorphism by five lemma. □

Corollary 1.4.3.19. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a pretriangulated category. Then a triangle of the form $X \xrightarrow{\iota_1} X \oplus Y \xrightarrow{p_2} Y \xrightarrow{0} X[1]$ is distinguished. Conversely, if a morphisn in a distinguished triangle is zero, then this triangle comes from a direct sum.*

Proof. To prove the first assertion, it suffices to apply Proposition 1.4.3.18 to the distinguished triangles $X \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_X} X \to 0 \to X[1]$ and $0 \to Y \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_Y} Y \to 0$. Now consider the second assertion; by rotating the triangle, it suffices to consider a distinguished triangle of the form

$$X \to M \to Y \xrightarrow{0} X[1].$$

By (TR4), we then obtain a morphism of distinguished triangles:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r, "\iota_1"] \arrow[d, equal] & X \oplus Y \arrow[r, "p_2"] \arrow[d, "\alpha"] & Y \arrow[r, "0"] \arrow[d, equal] & X[1] \arrow[d, equal] \\
X \arrow[r] & M \arrow[r] & Y \arrow[r, "0"] & X[1]
\end{tikzcd}$$

and it follows from Proposition 1.4.3.13 that α is an isomorphism. □

Corollary 1.4.3.20. *Let $F : (\mathcal{D}, T) \to (\mathcal{D}', T')$ be a functor between pretriangulated categories such that F sends distinguished triangles to distinguished triangles. Then F is additive, so it is a triangulated functor.*

Proof. From the distinguished triangle $0 \to 0 \to 0 \to 0$, we obtain a distinguished triangle $F(0) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} F(0) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} F(0) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} F(0)$ in $\mathcal{D}'$, so Proposition 1.4.3.9 implies that $\mathrm{id}_{F(0)} = \mathrm{id}_{F(0)} \circ \mathrm{id}_{F(0)} = 0$, and therefore $F(0) \cong 0$. This also shows that F sends zero morphisms to zero morphisms.

Now consider a distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{\iota_1} X \oplus Y \xrightarrow{p_2} Y \xrightarrow{0} X[1]$ in $\mathcal{D}$. By applying F, we obtain a distinguished triangle

$$F(X) \xrightarrow{F(\iota_1)} F(X \oplus Y) \longrightarrow F(Y) \xrightarrow{0} T(F(X))$$

in $\mathcal{D}'$. From Corollary 1.4.3.19 and its proof, it is easy to see that the canonical morphism $F(X) \oplus F(Y) \to F(X \oplus Y)$ is an isomorphism, so F is additive. □

Proposition 1.4.3.21 (Verdier's Exercise). *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category. Then any commutative diagram*

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & Y \arrow[d] \\
X' \arrow[r] & Y'
\end{tikzcd}$$

can be extended into a diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X[1] \arrow[d] \\
X' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & Y' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & Z' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X'[1] \arrow[d] \\
X'' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & Y'' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & Z'' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] \arrow[dr, phantom, "*"] & X''[1] \arrow[d] \\
X[1] \arrow[r] & Y[1] \arrow[r] & Z[1] \arrow[r] & X[2]
\end{tikzcd}$$

so that every rows and columns are distinguished triangles and every square is commutative except the one labeled by $*$, which is anti-commutative.

1.4.4 Verdier quotient

Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category and $\mathcal{N}$ a full saturated subcategory. Recall that $\mathcal{N}$ is saturated if $X \in \mathcal{D}$ belongs to $\mathcal{N}$ whenever X is isomorphic to an object of $\mathcal{N}$.

Lemma 1.4.4.1. *Let $\mathcal{N}$ be a full saturated triangulated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$. Then $\mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{N})$ satisfies the following conditions:*

(N1) $0 \in \mathcal{N}$.

(N2) $X \in \mathcal{N}$ *if and only if* $X[1] \in \mathcal{N}$.

(N3) *If* $X \to Y \to Z \to X[1]$ *is a distinguished triangle in* $\mathcal{D}$ *and* $X, Z \in \mathcal{N}$*, then* $Y \in \mathcal{N}$.

Conversely, let $\mathcal{N}$ be a full saturated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$ and assume that $\mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{N})$ satisfies conditions (N1)–(N3) above. Then the restriction of T and the collection of distinguished triangles $X \to Y \to Z \to X[1]$ with X, Y, Z in $\mathcal{N}$ make $\mathcal{N}$ a full saturated triangulated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$. Moreover it satisfies

(N3′) *If* $X \to Y \to Z \to X[1]$ *is a distinguished triangle in* $\mathcal{D}$ *and two objects among* X, Y, Z *belong to* $\mathcal{N}$*, then so does the third one.*

Proof. Assume that $\mathcal{N}$ is a full saturated triangulated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$. Then (N1) and (N2) are clearly satisfied. Moreover, (N3) follows from Corollary 1.4.3.14 and the hypothesis that $\mathcal{N}$ is saturated.

Conversely, let $\mathcal{N}$ be a full subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$ satisfying (N1)–(N3); then (N3′) follows from (N2) and (N3) by rotating the triangle. We now show that $\mathcal{N}$ is saturated, so let $f : X \to Y$ be an isomorphism with $X \in \mathcal{N}$. The triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to 0 \to X[1]$ is then isomorphic to the distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_X} X \to 0 \to X[1]$:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r, "\mathrm{id}_X"] \arrow[d, equal] & X \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "f", "\sim"'] & 0 \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & X[1] \arrow[d, equal] \\
X \arrow[r, "f"] & Y \arrow[r] & 0 \arrow[r] & X[1]
\end{tikzcd}$$

and hence is distinguished. It then follows from (N3) that $Y \in \mathcal{N}$. On the other hand, since $X \to X \oplus Y \to Y \xrightarrow{0} X[1]$ is a distinguished triangle for $X, Y \in \mathcal{N}$, we find that $X \oplus Y \in \mathcal{N}$, so $\mathcal{N}$ is a full additive subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$. The axioms of triangulated categories are then easily checked. $\square$

A **null system** in $\mathcal{D}$ is a full saturated subcategory N such that $\mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{N})$ satisfies the conditions (N1)–(N3) in Lemma 1.4.4.1. By Lemma 1.4.4.1, $\mathcal{N}$ can be then considered as a triangulated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$. We associate a family of morphisms to a null system as follows:

$$\mathcal{N}Q = \{f : X \to Y : \text{there exists a distinguished triangle } X \to Y \to Z \to X[1] \text{ with } Z \in \mathcal{N}\}. \quad (1.4.4.1)$$

The morphisms in $\mathcal{N}Q$ turn out to form a multiplicative system of $\mathcal{C}$ that is compatible with the distinguished triangles in $\mathcal{D}$. To make this precise, we introduce the following definition:

Definition 1.4.4.2. Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a multiplicative system of a triangulated category $\mathcal{D}$. Then $\mathcal{D}$ is said to be **compatible with the distinguished triangles** in $\mathcal{D}$ if it satisfies the following conditions:

(ST1) For any morphism $s : X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{D}$, $s \in \mathcal{S}$ if and only if $s[1] \in \mathcal{S}$.

(ST2) Consider a solid diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\alpha"] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\beta"] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed, "\gamma"] & X[1] \arrow[d, dashed] \\
X' \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r] & Z' \arrow[r] & X'[1]
\end{tikzcd}$$

if $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{S}$, then there exists a morphism $\gamma \in \mathcal{S}$ giving rise to a morphisms of distinguished triangles.

The importance of the compatibility of $\mathcal{S}$ with distinguished triangles is contained in the following proposition:

Proposition 1.4.4.3. *Let $\mathcal{S}$ be a multiplicative system of $\mathcal{D}$ that is compatible with the distinguished triangles. Then the localization $\mathcal{D}_{\mathcal{S}}$ has a uniquely determined triangulated category structure so that the localization functor $Q : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}_{\mathcal{S}}$ is triangulated.*

Proof. Since $\mathcal{D}$ is additive, it follows from Theorem 1.4.1.19 that the localization $\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ is additive, and $Q : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ is an additive functor. As for the uniqueness of the triangulated category structure, it suffices to note that for any distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z \to X[1]$, by adjusting using isomorphisms in $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$, we can assume that $f : X \to Y$ is a morphism in $\mathcal{D}$. But it then follows from Proposition 1.4.3.13 that this triangle is isomorphic to a distinguished triangle in $\mathcal{D}$.

We now define the distinguished triangles of $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{S}}$ as the images of that of $\mathcal{D}$ under Q. Axioms (TR0)–(TR3) follow directly from that of $\mathcal{D}$, so let's prove (TR4). With the notations of (TR3) and (Exercise), we may assume that there exists a commutative diagram in $\mathcal{D}$ of solid arrows, with horizontal arrows belong to $\mathcal{D}$:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, "\tilde{\alpha}"] & Y \arrow[r, "g"] \arrow[d, "\tilde{\beta}"] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed, "\tilde{\gamma}"] & X[1] \arrow[d, dashed, "\tilde{\alpha}[1]"] \\
A \arrow[r] & B \arrow[r, dashed] & C \arrow[r, dashed] & A[1] \\
X' \arrow[r, "f'"] \arrow[u, "s"] & Y' \arrow[r, "g'"] \arrow[u, "t"] & Z' \arrow[r] \arrow[u, dashed, "u"] & X'[1] \arrow[u, dashed, "s[1]"]
\end{tikzcd}$$

Now by applying (TR2) to the morphism $A \to B$, we obtain a distinguished triangle $A \to B \to C \to A[1]$, and by (ST2) there is a morphism $u : Z' \to C$ in $\mathcal{S}$ completing the lower square. Also, by (TR4) there is a morphism $\tilde{\gamma} : Z \to C$ completing the upper square, and we have construct the desired morphism of distinguished triangles in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathcal{S}}$. Finally, consider two morphisms $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Y \to Z$ in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathcal{S}}$, which we may assume to belong to $\mathcal{D}$. Then by applying (TR5) and take the iamge in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathcal{S}}$ of the octahedron diagram, we conclude that (TR5) holds for $\mathcal{D}_{\mathcal{S}}$. □

Theorem 1.4.4.4 (Verdier). *Let $\mathcal{N}$ be a null system in a triangulated category $\mathcal{D}$.*

(i) *$\mathcal{N}Q$ is a multiplicative system compatible with distinguished triangles in $\mathcal{D}$.*

(ii) *Denote by $\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ the localization of $\mathcal{D}$ by $\mathcal{N}Q$ and by $Q : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ the localization functor. Then $\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ is an additive category endowed with an automorphism (the image of T, still denoted by T), and there is a canonical triangulated structure on $\mathcal{D}_{\mathcal{S}}$ so that $\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{Q}$ is a triangulated category and Q is a triangulated functor.*

(iii) *For a morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{D}$, we have $Q(f) = 0$ if and only if f factorizes through an object of $\mathcal{N}$. In particular, $Q(N) = 0$ for $N \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{N})$.*

(iv) *For any pretriangulated category $\mathcal{D}'$ and any triangulated functor $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'$ such that $F(X) \cong 0$ for any $X \in \mathcal{N}$, F factors uniquely through Q.*

(v) *For any abelian category $\mathcal{A}$ and any cohomological functor $H : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{A}$, if $H(N) = 0$ for $N \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{N})$, then H factors uniquely through Q.*

Proof. Since the opposite category of $\mathcal{D}$ is again triangulated and $\mathcal{N}^{\mathrm{op}}$ is a null system in $\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}}$, it is enough to check that $\mathcal{N}Q$ is a right multiplicative system.

(S1) If $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{D})$, then $X \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}_X} X \to 0 \to X[1]$ is distinguished in $\mathcal{D}$ by (TR1), so $\mathrm{id}_X \in \mathcal{N}Q$.

(S2) Let $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Y \to Z$ be in $\mathcal{N}Q$. By (TR3), there are distinguished triangles

$$X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to Z' \to X[1],$$
$$Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \to X' \to Y[1],$$
$$X \xrightarrow{gf} Z \to Y' \to X[1],$$

where we can assume that $Z', X' \in \mathcal{N}$. By (TR5), there exists a distinguished triangle $Z' \to Y' \to X' \to Z'[1]$, so $Y' \in \mathcal{N}$ in view of (N3).

(S3′) Let $f : X \to Y$ and $s : X \to X'$ be two morphisms with $s \in \mathcal{N}Q$. Then there exists a distinguished triangle $W \xrightarrow{h} X \xrightarrow{s} X' \to W[1]$ with $W \in \mathcal{N}$. By (TR2), there also exists a distinguished triangle $W \xrightarrow{fh} Y \xrightarrow{t} Z \to W[1]$, and we obtain a commutative diagram in view of (TR4):

$$\begin{tikzcd} W \arrow[r, "h"] \arrow[d, equal] & X \arrow[r, "s"] \arrow[d, "f"] & X' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & W[1] \arrow[d, equal] \\ W \arrow[r, "fh"] & Y \arrow[r, "t"] & Z \arrow[r] & W[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

Since $W \in \mathcal{N}$, we conclude that $t \in \mathcal{N}Q$.

(S4′) Replacing f by $f - g$, it is enough to check that if there exists $s \in \mathcal{N}Q$ with $fs = 0$, then there exists $t \in \mathcal{N}Q$ with $tf = 0$. Consider the solid diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} X' \arrow[r, "s"] & X \arrow[r] \arrow[dr, "f"] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed, "h"] & X'[1] \\ & & Y \arrow[d, dashed, "t"] & \\ & & Y' & \end{tikzcd}$$

where the row is a distinguished triangle with $Z \in \mathcal{N}$. Since $fs = 0$, the morphism f factors thorugh Z in view of Proposition 1.4.3.11. There then exists a distinguished triangle $Z \to Y \xrightarrow{h} Y' \to Z[1]$ by (TR2), and we obtain that $t \in \mathcal{N}Q$ since $Z \in \mathcal{N}$. Finally, $th = 0$ implies that $tf = 0$ (cf. Proposition 1.4.3.9).

It remains to see that $\mathcal{N}Q$ is compatible with distinguished triangles. For this, since $\mathcal{N}$ is closed under T, it is easy to see that $\mathcal{N}Q$ satisfies (ST1). Moreover, consider the diagram of (ST2) and assume that $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{N}Q$. Then by Verdier's Exercise, we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} {} & {} & {} & \\ X'' \arrow[r] \arrow[u, "+1"] & Y'' \arrow[r] \arrow[u, "+1"] & Z'' \arrow[r, "+1"] \arrow[u, "+1"] & {} \\ X' \arrow[r] \arrow[u] & Y' \arrow[r] \arrow[u] & Z' \arrow[r, "+1"] \arrow[u] & {} \\ X \arrow[r] \arrow[u, "\alpha"] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[u, "\beta"] & Z \arrow[r, "+1"] \arrow[u, "\gamma"] & {} \end{tikzcd}$$

so that every rows and columns are distinguished triangles and every square is commutative. By the saturality of $\mathcal{N}$ and Corollary 1.4.3.15, we see that $X'', Y'' \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{N})$, so it follows from (N3′) that $Z'' \in \mathcal{N}$, whence $\gamma \in \mathcal{N}Q$. Now from Proposition 1.4.4.3, we see that $\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ has a canonical structure of a triangulated category, and $Q : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ is a triangulated functor.

As for (iii), consider a distinguished triangle $0 \to N \to N \to 0$, where $N \in \mathcal{N}$. Then the morphism $0 \to X$ belongs to $\mathcal{N}Q$, and hence is an isomorphism under Q. In particular, if $f : X \to Y$ can be decomposed into $X \to N \to Y$ with $N \in \mathcal{N}$, then $Q(f) = 0$. Conversely, if $Q(f) = 0$, then there exists a morphism $s : M \to X$ such that $s \in \mathcal{N}Q$ and $fs = 0$ (Corollary 1.4.1.12). From the definition of $\mathcal{N}Q$, we have a solid commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} M \arrow[r, "s"] \arrow[d] & X \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "f"] & N \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed] & M[1] \arrow[d, dashed] \\ 0 \arrow[r] & Y \arrow[r, "\mathrm{id}_Y"] & Y \arrow[r] & 0 \end{tikzcd}$$

By (TR4), there exists a morphism $N \to Y$ giving rise to the commutative diagram, and we then obtain a decomposition $X \to N \to Y$ of f.

Now let $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'$ be a triangulated functor, where $\mathcal{D}'$ is a pretriangulated category. Then for $s \in \mathcal{N}Q$, we have a distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{s} Y \to N \to X[1]$ such that $N \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{N})$, whence a distinguished triangle $F(X) \xrightarrow{F(s)} F(Y) \to 0 \to F(X)[1]$ in $\mathcal{D}'$. By Corollary 1.4.3.12, we conclude that $F(s)$ is an isomorphism, so there is a uniquely determined factorization $F = \overline{F} \circ Q$, where $\overline{F}$ is an additive functor. From the description of distinguished triangles in $\mathcal{N}Q$, it is easy to see that $\overline{F}$ is a triangulated functor.

Finally, let $H : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{A}$ be a cohomological functor. By considering a distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{s} Y \to N \to X[1]$ such that $N \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{N})$, we obtain an exact sequence

$$0 = H(N[-1]) \longrightarrow H(X) \xrightarrow{H(s)} H(Y) \longrightarrow H(N) = 0$$

so $H(s)$ is an isomorphism and we obtain a uniquely determined factorization $H = \overline{H} \circ Q$. Similarly, it is immediate to check that $\overline{H}$ is a cohomological functor. □

Now consider a full triangulated subcategory $\mathcal{I}$ of $\mathcal{D}$. We shall write $\mathcal{N} \cap \mathcal{I}$ for the full subcategory whose objects are $\mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{N}) \cap \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{I})$. This is clearly a null system in $\mathcal{I}$.

Proposition 1.4.4.5. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category, $\mathcal{N}$ a null system, $\mathcal{I}$ a full triangulated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$. Assume that one of the following conditions is true:*

(a) *any morphism $Y \to Z$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$ and $Z \in \mathcal{N}$ factorizes as $Y \to Z' \to Z$ with $Z' \in \mathcal{N} \cap \mathcal{I}$;*

(b) *any morphism $Z \to Y$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$ and $Z \in \mathcal{N}$ factorizes as $Z \to Z' \to Y$ with $Z' \in \mathcal{N} \cap \mathcal{I}$.*

Then $\mathcal{I}/(\mathcal{N} \cap \mathcal{I}) \to \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ is fully faithful.

Proof. We may assume (b), the case (a) being deduced by considering $\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}}$. We shall apply Proposition 1.4.1.17. Let $f : X \to Y$ is a morphism in $\mathcal{N}Q$ with $X \in \mathcal{I}$, we show that there exists $g : Y \to W$ with $W \in \mathcal{I}$ and $g \circ f \in \mathcal{N}Q$. By definition, the morphism f is embedded in a distinguished triangle $X \to Y \to Z \to X[1]$ with $Z \in \mathcal{N}$, and the hypothesis implies that the morphism $Z \to X[1]$ factorizes through an object $Z' \in \mathcal{N} \cap \mathcal{I}$. We may embed $Z' \to TX$ in a distinguished triangle in $\mathcal{I}$ and obtain a commutative diagram of distinguished triangles by (TR4):

$$\begin{tikzcd}
X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, equal] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[d, dashed, "g"] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X[1] \arrow[d, equal] \\
X \arrow[r, "g \circ f"] & W \arrow[r] & Z' \arrow[r] & X[1]
\end{tikzcd}$$

Since Z' belongs to $\mathcal{N}$, we conclude that $gf \in \mathcal{N}Q \cap \mathrm{Mor}(\mathcal{I})$. □

Proposition 1.4.4.6. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category, $\mathcal{N}$ be a null system, $\mathcal{I}$ be a full triangulated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$, and assume that one of the following conditions is true:*

(a) *for any $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{D})$, there exists a morphism $X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{N}Q$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$;*

(b) *for any $X \in \mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{D})$, there exists a morphism $Y \to X$ in $\mathcal{N}Q$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$;*

Then $\mathcal{I}/(\mathcal{N} \cap \mathcal{I}) \to \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ is an equivalence of categories.

Proof. Apply Corollary 1.4.1.18. □

Example 1.4.4.7. Let H be a cohomological functor on $\mathcal{D}$. We define $\mathcal{N}_H$ to be the collection of objects $X \in \mathcal{D}$ such that $H(X[n]) = 0$ for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then it is easy to verify that $\mathcal{N}_H$ satisfies conditions (N1)–(N3), so we can form the localization $\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}_H$.

Proposition 1.4.4.8. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category admitting direct sums indexed by a set I and let $\mathcal{N}$ be a null system closed by such direct sums. Let $Q : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ denote the localization functor. Then $\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ admits direct sums indexed by I and the localization functor $Q : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ commutes with such direct sums.*

Proof. Let $\{X_i\}_{i\in I}$ be a family of objects in $\mathcal{D}$. It is enough to show that $Q(\bigoplus_i X_i)$ is the direct sum of the family $Q(X_i)$, i.e., the map

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}}(Q(\bigoplus_i X_i), Y) \to \prod_i \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}}(Q(X_i), Y)$$

is bijective for any $Y \in \mathcal{D}$. To this end, we first consider morphisms $u_i \in \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}}(Q(X_i), Y)$. Then u_i is represented by a pair $(X_i'; s, u_i')$, where $u_i' : X_i' \to Y$ is a morphism in $\mathcal{D}$ and we have a distinguished triangle

$$X_i' \xrightarrow{s} X_i \longrightarrow Z_i \longrightarrow X_i'[1]$$

in $\mathcal{D}$ with $Z_i \in \mathcal{N}$. We then get a morphism $\bigoplus_i X_i' \to Y$ and a distinguished triangle $\bigoplus_i X_i' \to \bigoplus_i X_i \to \bigoplus_i Z_i \to (\bigoplus_i X_i')[1]$ in $\mathcal{D}$ with $\bigoplus_i Z_i \in \mathcal{N}$.

Now assume that the composition $Q(X_i) \to Q(\bigoplus_i X_i) \xrightarrow{u} Q(Y)$ is zero for each $i \in I$. By definition, the morphism u is represented by a pair $(Y'; s, u')$, where $u' : \bigoplus_i X_i \to Y'$ is a morphism in $\mathcal{D}$ and $s : Y \to Y'$ is a morphism in $\mathcal{N}Q$. Using the result of Theorem 1.4.4.4(iii), we can find $Z_i \in \mathcal{N}$ such that $u_i' : X_i \to Y'$ factroizes as $X_i \to Z_i \to Y'$. Then the induced morphism $\bigoplus_i X_i \to Y'$ factorizes as $\bigoplus_i X_i \to \bigoplus_i Z_i \to Y'$. Since $\bigoplus_i Z_i \in \mathcal{N}$, we conclude that $Q(u) = 0$, whence the proposition. □

1.4.5 Localization of triangulated functors

Let $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'$ be a functor of triangulated categories, $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}'$ be null systems in $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{D}'$, respectively. The left (resp. right) localization of F (when it exists) is then defined, by replacing "functor" by "triangulated functor". In the sequel, $\mathcal{D}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}'$, $\mathcal{D}''$) is a triangulated category and $\mathcal{N}$ (resp. $\mathcal{N}'$, $\mathcal{N}''$) is a null system in this category. We denote by $Q : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}$ (resp. $Q' : \mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{D}'/\mathcal{N}'$, $Q'' : \mathcal{D}'' \to \mathcal{D}''/\mathcal{N}''$) the localization functor and by $\mathcal{N}Q$ (resp. $\mathcal{N}'Q$, $\mathcal{N}''Q$) the family of morphisms in $\mathcal{D}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}'$, $\mathcal{D}''$) defined in (1.4.4.1).

Definition 1.4.5.1. A triangulated functor $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'$ is called **left (resp. right) localizable with respect to** $(\mathcal{N}, \mathcal{N}')$ if $Q' \circ F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'/\mathcal{N}'$ is universally left (resp. right) localizable with respect to the multiplicative system $\mathcal{N}Q$. If there is no risk of confusion, we simply say that F is left (resp. right) localizable or that LF (resp. RF) exists.

Definition 1.4.5.2. Let $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'$ be a triangulated functor of triangulated categories, $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}'$ null systems in $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{D}'$, and $\mathcal{I}$ a full triangulated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$. Consider the following conditions:

(a) For any $X \in \mathcal{D}$, there exists a morphism $X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{N}Q$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$.

(b) For any $X \in \mathcal{D}$, there exists a morphism $Y \to X$ in $\mathcal{N}Q$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$.

(c) For any $Y \in \mathcal{N} \cap \mathcal{I}$, $F(Y) \in \mathcal{N}'$.

Then if (a) and (b) (resp. (b) and (c)) are satisfied, we say that the subcategory $\mathcal{I}$ is ***F*-injective** (resp. ***F*-projective**) with respect to $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}'$. If there is no risk of confusion, we often omit "with respect to $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}'$".

Note that if $F(\mathcal{N}) \subseteq \mathcal{N}'$, then D is both F-injective and F-projective.

Proposition 1.4.5.3. *Let $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'$ be a triangulated functor of triangulated categories, $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}'$ null systems in $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{D}'$, and $\mathcal{I}$ a full triangulated category of $\mathcal{D}$.*

(a) *If $\mathcal{I}$ is F-injective with respect to $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}$, then F is right localizable and its right localization is a triangulated functor.*

(b) *If $\mathcal{I}$ is F-projective with respect to $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}'$, then F left localizable and its left localization is a triangulated functor.*

Proof. By Proposition 1.4.2.2, the existence of the localizations is clear. To verify that they are triangulated, it suffices to apply Theorem 1.4.4.4 to check this in $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{D}'$, and this follows from the hypothesis on F. □

We denote by $R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F : \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{D}'/\mathcal{N}'$ (resp. $L^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F$) the right (resp. left) localization of F with respect to $(\mathcal{N}, \mathcal{N}')$. If there is no risk of confusion, we simply write RF (resp. LF) instead of $R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F$ (resp. $L^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F$). If $\mathcal{I}$ is F-injective, then RF can be defined by the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & \mathcal{D} \arrow[r] & \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N} \arrow[dd, dashed, "R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F"] \\
\mathcal{I} \arrow[ur] \arrow[r] \arrow[drr] & \mathcal{I}/(\mathcal{I}\cap\mathcal{N}) \arrow[ur, "\sim"] \arrow[dr] & \\
 & & \mathcal{D}'/\mathcal{N}'
\end{tikzcd}$$

and we have

$$R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F(X) \cong F(Y) \quad \text{for } (X \to Y) \in \mathcal{N}Q \text{ with } Y \in \mathcal{I}. \tag{1.4.5.1}$$

Similarly, if $\mathcal{I}$ is F-projective, then the diagram above defines LF and we have

$$L^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F(X) \cong F(Y) \quad \text{for } (Y \to X) \in \mathcal{N}Q \text{ with } Y \in \mathcal{I}. \tag{1.4.5.2}$$

Proposition 1.4.5.4. *Let $F : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}'$ and $F' : \mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{D}''$ be triangulated functors of triangulated categories and let $\mathcal{N}$, $\mathcal{N}'$ and $\mathcal{N}''$ be null systems in $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{D}'$ and $\mathcal{D}''$, respectively.*

(a) *Assume that $R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F$, $R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F$ and $R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F$ exist. Then there is a canonical morphism of functors:*

$$R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}}(F' \circ F) \to R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}'}F' \circ R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F. \tag{1.4.5.3}$$

(b) *Let $\mathcal{I}$ and $\mathcal{I}'$ be full triangulated subcategories of $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{D}'$, respectively. Assume that I is F-injective with respect to $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}'$, $\mathcal{I}'$ is F'-injective with respect to $\mathcal{N}'$ and $\mathcal{N}''$, and $F(\mathcal{I}) \subseteq \mathcal{I}'$. Then $\mathcal{I}$ is $(F' \circ F)$-injective with respect to $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}''$ and (1.4.5.3) is an isomorphism*

Proof. By definition, there exists a bijection

$$\mathrm{Hom}(R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}}F' \circ F, R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}'}F' \circ R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(Q'' \circ F' \circ F, R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}'}F' \circ R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F \circ Q),$$

and the natural morphism of functors

$$Q'' \circ F' \to R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}'}F' \circ Q', \quad Q' \circ F \to R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F \circ Q.$$

We then deduce the canonical morphisms

$$Q'' \circ F' \circ F \to R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}'}F' \circ Q' \circ F \to R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}'}F' \circ R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F \circ Q$$

whence the morphism in (a). Now assume the conditions in (b); the fact that $\mathcal{I}$ is $(F' \circ F)$-injective follows immediately from the definition. Let $X \in \mathcal{D}$ and consider a morphism $X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{N}Q$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$. Then $R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F(X) \cong F(Y)$ by (1.4.5.1) and $F(Y) \in \mathcal{I}'$ by our hypothesis. It then follows from (1.4.5.1) that $(R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}'}F')(F(Y)) \cong F'(F(Y))$, and we conclude that

$$(R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}'}F)(R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}F(X)) \cong F'(F(Y)).$$

On the other hand, $R^{\mathcal{N}'}_{\mathcal{N}}(F' \circ F)(X) \cong F'(F(Y))$ by (1.4.5.1), since $\mathcal{I}$ is $(F' \circ F)$-injective. □

We now restrict our notations of localizations to triangulated bifunctors. Let $(\mathcal{D}, T)$, $(\mathcal{D}', T')$ and $(\mathcal{D}'', T'')$ be triangulated categories. A **triangulated bifunctor** $F : \mathcal{D} \times \mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{D}''$ is a bifunctor of additive categories with translations which sends distinguished triangles in each arguments to distinguished triangles.

Definition 1.4.5.5. Let $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{D}'$ and $\mathcal{D}''$ be triangulated categories and $\mathcal{N}$, $\mathcal{N}'$ and $\mathcal{N}''$ be null systems in $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{D}'$ and $\mathcal{D}''$, respectively. We say that a triangulated bifunctor $F : \mathcal{D} \times \mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{D}''$ is **right (resp. left) localizable with respect to** $(\mathcal{N}, \mathcal{N}, \mathcal{N}'')$ if $Q'' \circ F : \mathcal{D} \times \mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{D}''/\mathcal{N}''$ is universally right (resp. left) localizable with respect to the multiplicative system $\mathcal{N}Q \times \mathcal{N}'Q$. If there is no risk of confusion, we simply say that F is right (resp. left) localizable.

If $\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{I}'$ are full triangulated subcategories of $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{D}'$, respectively, then the pair $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{I}')$ is F-**injective** with respect to $(\mathcal{N}, \mathcal{N}', \mathcal{N}'')$ if

(i) $\mathcal{I}'$ is $F(Y,-)$-injective with respect to $\mathcal{N}'$ and $\mathcal{N}''$ for any $Y \in \mathcal{I}$.

(ii) $\mathcal{I}$ is $F(-,Y')$-injective with respect to $\mathcal{N}$ and $\mathcal{N}''$ for any $Y' \in \mathcal{I}'$.

Equivalently, this amounts to saying that

(a) for any $X \in \mathcal{D}$, there exists a morphism $X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{N}Q$ with $Y \in \mathcal{I}$;

(b) for any $X' \in \mathcal{D}'$, there exists a morphism $X' \to Y'$ in $\mathcal{N}'Q$ with $Y' \in \mathcal{I}'$;

(c) $F(X,X')$ belongs to $\mathcal{N}''$ for $X \in \mathcal{I}$, $X' \in \mathcal{I}'$ as soon as X belongs to $\mathcal{N}$ or X' belongs to $\mathcal{N}'$.

The property for $(\mathcal{I},\mathcal{I}')$ of being F**-projective** is defined similarly.

We denote by $R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}\times\mathcal{N}'}$ the right localization of F with respect to $(\mathcal{N}\times\mathcal{N}',\mathcal{N}'')$ if it exists. If there is no risk of confusion, we simply write RF. We use similar notations for the left localization.

Proposition 1.4.5.6. *Let $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{D}'$ and $\mathcal{D}''$ be triangulated categories and $\mathcal{N}$, $\mathcal{N}'$ and $\mathcal{N}''$ be null systems in $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{D}'$ and $\mathcal{D}''$, respectively. Let $F : \mathcal{D}\times\mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated bifunctor and $\mathcal{I},\mathcal{I}'$ be full triangulated subcategories of $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{D}'$ such that $(\mathcal{I},\mathcal{I}')$ is F-injective with respect to $(\mathcal{N},\mathcal{N}')$. Then F is right localizable, its right localization $R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}\times\mathcal{N}'}F$ is a triangulated bifunctor*

$$R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}\times\mathcal{N}'} : \mathcal{D}/\mathcal{N}\times\mathcal{D}'/\mathcal{N}' \to \mathcal{D}''/\mathcal{N}'',$$

and moreover,

$$R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}\times\mathcal{N}'}F(X,X') \cong F(Y,Y') \tag{1.4.5.4}$$

for $(X\to Y)\in\mathcal{N}Q$ and $(X'\to Y')\in\mathcal{N}'Q$ with $Y\in\mathcal{I}$, $Y'\in\mathcal{I}'$. There exists a similar result by replacing "injective" with "projective" and reversing the arrows.

Proof. By definition, $Q''\circ F$ sends $\mathcal{N}Q\cap\mathrm{Mor}(\mathcal{I})\times(\mathcal{N}'Q\cap\mathrm{Mor}(\mathcal{I}'))$ to isomorphisms in $\mathcal{D}''$, so it follows from Proposition 1.4.2.2 that the right localization $R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}\times\mathcal{N}'}$ exists. The fact that $R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}\times\mathcal{N}'}$ is triangulated follows from the hypothsis on F, in view of Theorem 1.4.4.4. The last equation is a concequence of Proposition 1.4.5.4. □

Corollary 1.4.5.7. *Retain the notations of Proposition 1.4.5.6 and assume that*

(a) *$F(\mathcal{I},\mathcal{N}')\subseteq\mathcal{N}''$;*

(b) *for any $X'\in\mathcal{D}'$, $\mathcal{I}$ is $F(-,X')$-injective with respect to $\mathcal{N}$.*

Then F is right localizable and we have

$$R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}\times\mathcal{N}'}F(X,X') \cong R^{\mathcal{N}''}_{\mathcal{N}}F(-,X')(X).$$

Again, there is a similar statement by replacing "injective" with "projective".

Proof. Under our hypothesis, for any fixed object $X'\in\mathcal{D}'$, the functor $F(-,X')$ is right localizable, and the last claim follows from (1.4.5.3) and (1.4.5.4). □

1.5 Derived categories

In this section, we apply the previous results of triangulated categories on the derived category of an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$, which is defined to be the localization of $K(\mathcal{A})$ with respect to quasi-isomorphisms. Our main refrence will be [**?**].

1.5.1 Derived categories

Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation. Recall that the cohomology functor $H : \mathcal{A}_c \to \mathcal{A}$ induces a cohomological functor

$$H : K_c(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{A}.$$

Let $\mathcal{N}$ be the full subcategory of $K_c(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of objects X such that $H(X) \cong 0$, that is, X is quasi-isomorphic to 0. Since H is cohomological, the category $\mathcal{N}$ is a triangulated subcategory of $K_c(\mathcal{A})$. We denote by $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ the category $K_c(\mathcal{A})/\mathcal{N}$, and call it the **derived category** of $(\mathcal{A}, T)$. Note that $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ is triangulated by **??**. By the properties of the localization, a quasi-isomorphism in $K_c(\mathcal{A})$ (or in $\mathcal{A}_c$) becomes an isomorphism in $D_c(\mathcal{A})$. One shall be aware that the category $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ may be a big category.

From now on, we shall restrict our study to the case where $\mathcal{A}_c$ is the category of complexes of an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$. Recall that the categories $C^*(\mathcal{A})$ are defined for $* \in \{+, -, b, \varnothing\}$, and we have full subcategories $K^*(\mathcal{A})$ of $K(\mathcal{A})$. For $* \in \{+, -, b, \varnothing\}$, we define

$$N^*(\mathcal{A}) = \{X \in K^*(\mathcal{A}) : H^i(X) \cong 0 \text{ for all } i\}.$$

Clearly, $N^*(\mathcal{A})$ is a null system in $K^*(\mathcal{C})$.

Definition 1.5.1.1. The triangulated categories $D^*(\mathcal{A})$ are defined as $K^*(\mathcal{A})/N^*(\mathcal{A})$ and are called the **derived categories** of $\mathcal{A}$.

Recall that to a null system $\mathcal{N}$ we have associated in (1.4.4.1) a multiplicative system denoted by $\mathcal{N}Q$. It will be more intuitive to use here another notation for $\mathcal{N}Q$ when $\mathcal{N} = N(\mathcal{A})$:

$$\mathrm{Qis} = \{f \in \mathrm{Mor}(K(\mathcal{A})) : f \text{ is a quasi-isomorphism}\}.$$

With this notation, we then have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y) &\cong \varinjlim_{(X' \to X) \in \mathrm{Qis}} \mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X', Y) \cong \varinjlim_{(Y' \to Y) \in \mathrm{Qis}} \mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y') \\ &\cong \varinjlim_{\substack{(X' \to X) \in \mathrm{Qis} \\ (Y \to Y') \in \mathrm{Qis}}} \mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X', Y').\end{aligned}$$

Remark 1.5.1.2. Let $X \in K(\mathcal{A})$, and let $Q(X)$ denote its image in $D(\mathcal{A})$. Then it follows from our definition of $\mathcal{N}(\mathcal{A})$ that $Q(X) = 0$ if and only if $H^n(X) = 0$ for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Also, if $f : X \to Y$ is a morphism in $\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$, then by Theorem 1.4.4.4, $f = 0$ in $D(\mathcal{A})$ if and only if there exist X' and a quasi-isomorphism $g : X' \to X$ such that fg is homotopic to 0, or else, if and only if there exist Y' and a quasi-isomorphism $h : Y \to Y'$ such that hf is homotopic to 0.

Proposition 1.5.1.3. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category and $D(\mathcal{A})$ be its derived category.*

(a) *For $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, the functor $H^n : D(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{A}$ is well defined and is a cohomological functor.*

(b) *A morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $D(\mathcal{A})$ is an isomorphism if and only if $H^n(f) : H^n(X) \to H^n(Y)$ is an isomorphism for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.*

(c) *For $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, the functors $\tau_{\leq n}, \tau^{\leq n} : D(\mathcal{A}) \to D^-(\mathcal{A})$, as well as the functors $\tau_{\geq n}, \tau^{\geq n} : D(\mathcal{A}) \to D^+(\mathcal{A})$, are well defined and isomorphic.*

(d) *For $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, the functor $\tau^{\leq n}$ induces a functor $D^+(\mathcal{A}) \to D^b(\mathcal{A})$ and $\tau^{\geq n}$ induces a functor $D^-(\mathcal{A}) \to D^b(\mathcal{A})$.*

Proof. Since $H^n(X) = 0$ for $X \in N(\mathcal{A})$, the first assertion is clear, and the second one follows from Theorem 1.4.4.4 and the definition of $\mathcal{N}Q$ for $\mathcal{N} = N(\mathcal{A})$: in fact, if $Q(f)$ is an isomorphism, then from the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} Q(X) \arrow[r, "Q(f)"] \arrow[d, "Q(f)"] & Q(Y) \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & Q(M(f)) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X[1] \arrow[d] \\ Q(Y) \arrow[r, equal] & Q(Y) \arrow[r] & 0 \arrow[r] & Q(Y)[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

we conclude that $Q(M(f)) \to 0$ is an isomorphism (Proposition 1.4.3.13), so $H^n(f)$ is an isomorphism for each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Now if $f : X \to Y$ is a quasi-isomorphism in $K(\mathcal{A})$, then $\tau^{\leq n}(f)$ and $\tau^{\geq n}(f)$ are quasi-isomorphism. Moreover, for $X \in K(\mathcal{A})$, the morphisms $\tau^{\leq n}(X) \to \tau_{\leq n}(X)$ and $\tau^{\geq n}(X) \to \tau_{\geq n}(X)$ are also quasi-isomorphism (**??**), so assertion (c) follows from (d), and (d) is then obvious. □

To a distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \to X[1]$ in $\mathcal{D}(\mathcal{A})$, the cohomological functor H^0 associates a long exact sequence in $\mathcal{A}$:

$$\cdots \longrightarrow H^i(X) \longrightarrow H^i(Y) \longrightarrow H^i(Z) \longrightarrow H^{i+1}(X) \longrightarrow \cdots$$

For $X \in K(\mathcal{A})$, recall that the categories $\mathrm{Qis}_{/X}$ and $\mathrm{Qis}_{X/}$ are filtrant (or cofiltrant) categories of $K(\mathcal{C})_{/X}$ and $K(\mathcal{A})_{X/}$, respectively. If $\mathcal{J}$ is a subcategory of $K(\mathcal{C})_{/X}$, we denote by $\mathrm{Qis}_{/X} \cap \mathcal{J}$ the full subcategory of $\mathrm{Qis}_{/X}$ consisting of objects which belong to $\mathcal{J}$. We use similar notations for $\mathrm{Qis}_{X/}$ and $K(\mathcal{C})_{X/}$.

Lemma 1.5.1.4. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category and n be an integer.*

(a) *For $X \in K^{\leq n}(\mathcal{A})$, the categories $\mathrm{Qis}_{/X} \cap K^{\leq n}(\mathcal{A})_{/X}$ and $\mathrm{Qis}_{/X} \cap K^{-}(\mathcal{A})_{/X}$ are co-cofinal to $\mathrm{Qis}_{/X}$.*

(b) *For $X \in K^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A})$, the categories $\mathrm{Qis}_{X/} \cap K^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A})_{X/}$ and $\mathrm{Qis}_{X/} \cap K^{+}(\mathcal{A})_{X/}$ are co-cofinal to $\mathrm{Qis}_{X/}$.*

Proof. The two statements are equivalent by reversing the arrows, so we only prove (b). The category $\mathrm{Qis}_{X/} \cap K^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A})_{X/}$ is a full subcategory of a filtrant category $\mathrm{Qis}_{X/}$, and for any object $(X \to Y)$ in $\mathrm{Qis}_{X/}$, there exists a canonical morphism $(X \to Y) \to (X \to \tau^{\geq n} Y)$. □

Proposition 1.5.1.5. *Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $X \in K^{\leq n}(\mathcal{A})$, $Y \in K^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A})$. Then we have*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(H^n(X), H^n(Y)) \tag{1.5.1.1}$$

Proof. The map $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y)$ is an isomorphism by our hypothesis and

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y) &\cong \{f \in \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X^n, Y^n) : u \circ d_X^{n-1} = 0, d_Y^n \circ f = 0\} \\ &\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(\operatorname{coker} d_X^{n-1}, \ker d_Y^n) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(H^n(X), H^n(Y))\end{aligned}$$

so we conclude that $\mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(H^n(X), H^n(Y))$. On the other hand, in view of Lemma 1.5.1.4, we have

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y) \cong \varinjlim_{(Y \to Y') \in \mathrm{Qis} \cap K^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A})} \mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y') \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(H^n(X), H^n(Y))$$

so the proposition follows. □

For $-\infty \leq a \leq b \leq +\infty$, we denote by $D^{[a,b]}(\mathcal{A})$ the full subcategory of $D(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of objects X satisfying $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i \notin [a, b]$. With this notation, we set $D^{\leq a}(\mathcal{A}) := D^{[-\infty,a]}(\mathcal{A})$ and $D^{\geq a}(\mathcal{A}) := D^{[a,+\infty]}(\mathcal{A})$.

Proposition 1.5.1.6. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category.*

(a) *For $* \in \{+, -, b\}$, the triangulated category $D^*(\mathcal{A})$ is equivalent to the full triangulated subcategory of $\mathcal{D}(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of objects X satisfying $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i \ll 0$ (resp. $i \gg 0$, resp. $|i| \gg 0$).*

(b) *For $-\infty \leq a \leq b \leq +\infty$, the canonical functor $Q : K^{[a,b]}(\mathcal{A}) \to D^{[a,b]}(\mathcal{A})$ is essentially surjective.*

(c) *The category $\mathcal{A}$ is equivalent to the full subcategory $D^{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A}) \cap D^{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$.*

(d) *For any $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $X, Y \in D(\mathcal{C})$, we have*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(\tau^{\leq n} X, \tau^{\geq n} Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(H^n(X), H^n(Y)).$$

In particular, $\mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(\tau^{\leq n} X, \tau^{\geq n+1} Y) = 0$.

Proof. As for assertion (a), let us treat the case $* = +$, the other cases being similar. For $Y \in K^{\geq a}(\mathcal{A})$ and $Z \in N(\mathcal{A})$, any morphism $Z \to Y$ in $K(\mathcal{A})$ factors through $\tau^{\geq n}Z \in N(\mathcal{A}) \cap K^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A})$. Applying Proposition 1.4.1.17, we find that the natural functor $D^{+}(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A})$ is fully faithful, and it is clear that if $Y \in D(\mathcal{A})$ belongs to the image of the functor $D^{+}(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A})$, then $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i \ll 0$. Conversely, let $X \in K(\mathcal{A})$ with $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i < a$. Then $\tau^{\geq a}X \in K^{+}(\mathcal{A})$ and the morphism $X \to \tau^{\geq a}X$ in $K(\mathcal{A})$ is a quasi-isomorphism, whence an isomorphism in $D(\mathcal{A})$. We therefore conclude (a), and the proof of (b) can be done similarly. Finally, by Proposition 1.5.1.5, the functor $\mathcal{A} \to D(\mathcal{A})$ is fully faithful and essentially surjective by (b); this proves (c), and (d) follows from (b) and Proposition 1.5.1.5. □

Proposition 1.5.1.7. *Let* $0 \to X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \to 0$ *be an exact sequence in* $\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$*. Then there exists a distinguished triangle* $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \to X[1]$ *and* Z *is isomorphic to* $M(f)$ *in* $D(\mathcal{A})$*.*

Proof. We define a morphism $\varphi : M(f) \to Z$ in $\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ by $\varphi^n = (0, g^n)$. By **??**, φ is then a quasi-isomorphism, whence an isomorphism in $D(\mathcal{A})$. □

Remark 1.5.1.8. Let $0 \to X \to Y \to Z \to 0$ be an exact sequence in $\mathcal{A}$. By Proposition 1.5.1.7, we then get a morphism $\gamma : Z \to X[1]$ in $D(\mathcal{A})$. The morphism $H^i(\gamma) : H^i(Z) \to H^{i+1}(X)$ is zero for all $i \in \mathbb{Z}$, although γ is not the zero morphism in $D(\mathcal{A})$ in general (this happens only if the short exact sequence splits). The morphism γ may be described in $K(\mathcal{A})$ by the morphisms with φ a quasi-isomorphism:

$$X[1] \xleftarrow{\beta(f)} M(f) \xrightarrow{\varphi} Z.$$

Proposition 1.5.1.9. *If* $X \in D(\mathcal{A})$*, there are distinguished triangles in* $D(\mathcal{A})$*:*

$$\tau^{\leq n}X \longrightarrow X \longrightarrow \tau^{\geq n+1}X \xrightarrow{+1}, \tag{1.5.1.2}$$

$$\tau^{\leq n-1}X \longrightarrow \tau^{\leq n}X \longrightarrow H^n(X)[-n] \xrightarrow{+1}, \tag{1.5.1.3}$$

$$H^n(X)[-n] \longrightarrow \tau^{\geq n}X \longrightarrow \tau^{\geq n+1}X \xrightarrow{+1}, \tag{1.5.1.4}$$

Moreover, we have canonical isomorphisms

$$H^n(X)[-n] \cong \tau^{\leq n}\tau^{\geq n}(X) \cong \tau^{\geq n}\tau^{\leq n}X. \tag{1.5.1.5}$$

Proof. This is a direct concequence of **??** and **??**. □

Proposition 1.5.1.10. *The functor* $\tau^{\leq n} : D(\mathcal{A}) \to D^{\leq n}(\mathcal{A})$ *is a right adjoint to the natural inclusion* $D^{\leq n}(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A})$ *and* $\tau^{\geq n} : D(\mathcal{A}) \to D^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A})$ *is a left adjoint to the natural functor* $D^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A})$*. In other words, there are functorial isomorphisms*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D^{\leq n}(\mathcal{A})}(X, \tau^{\leq n}Y) \quad \textit{for} \quad X \in D^{\leq n}(\mathcal{A}), Y \in D(\mathcal{A}),$$
$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A})}(\tau^{\geq n}X, Y) \quad \textit{for} \quad X \in D(\mathcal{A}), Y^{\geq n} \in D(\mathcal{A}).$$

Proof. Let $X \in D^{\leq n}(\mathcal{A})$, then by the distinguished triangle (1.5.1.2) for Y, we have an exact sequence

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, \tau^{\geq n+1}Y[-1]) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, \tau^{\leq n}Y) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, \tau^{\geq n+1}Y) \tag{1.5.1.6}$$

Since $\tau^{\geq n+1}Y[-1]$ and $\tau^{\geq n+1}Y$ belong to $D^{\geq n+1}(\mathcal{A})$, the first and fourth terms of (1.5.1.6) are zero by Proposition 1.5.1.6 (d). The second isomorphism follows by reversing the arrows. □

1.5.2 Resolutions

The derived category $D^*(\mathcal{A})$ is often a big category and this causes many problems. In this paragraph, by considering resolutions in the category $\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$, we show that in some case $D^*(\mathcal{A})$ is equivalent to the homotopy category of a subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$, and hence a $\mathscr{U}$-category, where $\mathscr{U}$ is the chosen universe.

Lemma 1.5.2.1. *Let* $\mathcal{J}$ *be a full additive subcategory of* $\mathcal{A}$ *and* $X^\bullet \in \mathrm{Ch}^{\geq n}(\mathcal{A})$ *for some* $n \in \mathbb{Z}$*. Assume that one of the following conditions holds:*

(a) *$\mathcal{J}$ is cogenerating in $\mathcal{A}$ (i.e. for any $Y \in \mathcal{A}$ there exists a monomorphism $Y \to I$ with $I \in \mathcal{J}$);*

(b) *$\mathcal{J}$ is closed under extensions and cokernels of monomorphisms, and for any monomorphism $I' \to Y$ in $\mathcal{A}$ with $I' \in \mathcal{J}$, there exists a morphism $Y \to I$ with $I \in \mathcal{J}$ such that the composition $I' \to I$ is a monomorphism. Moreover, $H^i(X^\bullet) \in \mathcal{J}$ for all $i \in \mathbb{Z}$.*

Then there exists $Y^\bullet \in \mathrm{Ch}^{\geq n}(\mathcal{J})$ and a quasi-isomorphism $X^\bullet \to Y^\bullet$.

Proof. □

Let $\mathcal{J}$ be a full additive subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$. It is clear that for $* \in \{+, -, b, \varnothing\}$, the $N^*(\mathcal{J}) := N(\mathcal{A}) \cap K^*(\mathcal{J})$ is a null system in $K^*(\mathcal{J})$. We say that $\mathcal{A}$ has **finite $\mathcal{J}$-dimension** if there exists a non-negative integer d such that, for any exact sequence

$$Y_d \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow Y_1 \longrightarrow Y \longrightarrow 0$$

with $Y_i \in \mathcal{J}$ for $1 \leq i \leq d$, we have $Y \in \mathcal{J}$.

Proposition 1.5.2.2. *Assume that $\mathcal{J}$ is cogenerating in $\mathcal{C}$, then the natural functor*

$$\theta^+ : K^+(\mathcal{J})/N^+(\mathcal{J}) \to D^+(\mathcal{C})$$

is an equivalence of categories. If $\mathcal{A}$ has finite $\mathcal{J}$-dimension, then $\theta^b : K^b(\mathcal{J})/N^b(\mathcal{J}) \to D^b(\mathcal{C})$ is also an equivalence of categories.

Proof. Let $X \in K^+(\mathcal{A})$. By Lemma 1.5.2.1, there exists $Y \in K^+(\mathcal{J})$ and a quasi-isomorphism $X \to Y$, so the first assertion follows from Proposition 1.4.4.5. Now assume that $\mathcal{A}$ has finite $\mathcal{J}$-dimension and that $X^i = 0$ for $i \geq n$, where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then $\tau^{\leq i}Y \to Y$ is a quasi-isomorphism for $i \geq n$ and the hypothesis implies that $\tau^{\leq i}Y$ belongs to $K^b(\mathcal{J})$ for $i > n + d$. This proves the second assertion in view of Proposition 1.4.4.5. □

Let us apply the preceding proposition to the full subcategory of injective objects: $\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{A}} = \{X \in \mathcal{A} : X \text{ is injective}\}$.

Proposition 1.5.2.3. *Assume that $\mathcal{A}$ admits enough injectives. Then the functor $K^+(\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{A}}) \to D^+(\mathcal{A})$ is an equivalence of categories. If moreover $\mathcal{A}$ has finite injective dimension, then $K^b(\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{A}}) \to D^b(\mathcal{A})$ is an equivalence of categories.*

Proof. By Proposition 1.5.2.2, it is enough to prove that if $X^\bullet \in \mathrm{Ch}^+(\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{A}})$ is quasi-isomorphic to 0, then $X^\bullet$ is homotopic to 0. This is a particular case of the lemma below (choose $f = \mathrm{id}_{X^\bullet}$ in the lemma). □

Lemma 1.5.2.4. *Let $f : X^\bullet \to I^\bullet$ be a morphism in $\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$. Assume that $I^\bullet$ belongs to $\mathrm{Ch}^+(\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{A}})$ and $X^\bullet$ is exact. Then f is homotopic to 0.*

Corollary 1.5.2.5. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian $\mathscr{U}$-category with enough injectives. Then $D^+(\mathcal{A})$ is a $\mathscr{U}$-category.*

Proposition 1.5.2.6. *Let $\mathcal{J}$ be a full additive subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ and assume that $\mathcal{J}$ is cogenerating and $\mathcal{A}$ has finite $\mathcal{J}$-dimension. Then for any $X \in \mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$, there exists $Y \in \mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{J})$ and a quasi-isomorphism $X \to Y$. In particular, there is an equivalence of triangulated categories $K(\mathcal{J})/N(\mathcal{J}) \xrightarrow{\sim} D(\mathcal{A})$.*

An important class of examples are given by Serre subcategories of $\mathcal{A}$: let $\mathcal{T}$ be a weak Serre subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$. For $* \in \{+, -, b, \varnothing\}$, we denote by $D^*_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A})$ the full additive subcategory of $D^*(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of objects X such that $H^i(X) \in \mathcal{T}$ for all $i \in \mathbb{Z}$. This is clearly a triangulated subcategory of $D(\mathcal{A})$, and there is a natural functor

$$\delta^* : D^*(\mathcal{T}) \to D^*_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A}). \tag{1.5.2.1}$$

Theorem 1.5.2.7. *Let $\mathcal{T}$ be a Serre subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ and assume that for any monomorphism $Y \to X$, with $Y \in \mathcal{T}$, there exists a morphism $X \to Y'$ with $Y' \in \mathcal{T}$ such that the composition $Y \to Y'$ is a monomorphism. Then the functors δ^+ and δ^b in (1.5.2.1) are equivalences of categories.*

Proof. The result for δ^+ is an immediate consequence of Corollary 1.4.1.18 and Lemma 1.5.2.1 (b). The case of δ^b follows since $D^b(\mathcal{T})$ is equivalent to the full subcategory of $D^+(\mathcal{T})$ of objects with bounded cohomology, and similarly for $D^b_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A})$. □

Note that, by reversing the arrows in Theorem 1.5.2.7, the functors δ^- and δ^b in (1.5.2.1) are equivalences of categories if for any epimorphism $X \to Y$ with $Y \in \mathcal{T}$, there exists a morphism $Y' \to X$ with $Y' \in \mathcal{T}$ such that the composition $Y' \to Y$ is an epimorphism.

1.5.3 Bounded functors and the way-out lemma

We now introduce an important result on how a triangulated functor on derived categories is determined by its values on the underlying abelian category. This is useful when one want to show that some natural map is a functorial isomorphism.

In this paragraph, we consider abelian categories $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{A}'$, and additive functors between subcategories of $D(\mathcal{A})$ and $D(\mathcal{A}')$. We choose a weak Serre subcategory $\mathcal{T}$ of $\mathcal{A}$ and denote by $D^*_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A})$ the full additive subcategory of $D^*(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of objects X such that $H^i(X) \in \mathcal{T}$ for all $i \in \mathbb{Z}$. If $\mathcal{E}$ is a subcategory of $D(\mathcal{A})$, we write $\mathcal{E}^{\geq n}$ (resp. $\mathcal{E}^{\geq n}$) for the subcategories of $\mathcal{E}$ whose objects are complexes X such that $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i < n$ (resp. $i > n$).

Definition 1.5.3.1. Let $\mathcal{E}$ be a subcategory of $D(\mathcal{A})$ and let $F : \mathcal{E} \to D(\mathcal{A}')$ be an additive functor. The **upper dimension** $\dim^+$ and **lower dimension** $\dim^-$ of the functor F are defined by

$$\dim^+(F) := \inf\{d \in \mathbb{Z} : F(\mathcal{E}^{\leq n}) \subseteq D^{\leq n+d}(\mathcal{A}') \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{Z}\},$$
$$\dim^-(F) := \inf\{d \in \mathbb{Z} : F(\mathcal{E}^{\geq n}) \subseteq D^{\geq n-d}(\mathcal{A}') \text{ for all } n \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$$

The functor F is called **bounded above** (resp. **bounded below**) if $\dim^+(F) < +\infty$ (resp. $\dim^-(F) < +\infty$), and **bounded** if it is both bounded above and bounded below.

Remark 1.5.3.2. If $F : \mathcal{E} \to D(\mathcal{A}')$ is compatible with the translation functors of $D(\mathcal{A})$ and $D(\mathcal{A}')$, then we see that $F(\mathcal{E}^{\geq n}) \subseteq D^{\geq n+d}(\mathcal{A}')$ holds for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ as soon as it holds for one single n, for example $n = 0$. Therefore, in this case we can also define $\dim^+(F)$ to be the smallest integer d such that $F(\mathcal{E}^{\leq 0}) \subseteq D^{\leq d}(\mathcal{A}')$, and similarly for $\dim^-(F)$.

Example 1.5.3.3. If $\mathcal{E}$ is a triangulated subcategory of $D(\mathcal{A})$ such that $\tau^{\geq n}(\mathcal{E}) \subseteq \mathcal{E}$ and $\tau^{\leq n}(\mathcal{E}) \subseteq \mathcal{E}$ (for example, if $\mathcal{E} = D^*_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A})$), and if F is a triangulated functor, then $\dim^+(F) \leq d$ if and only if for any $X \in \mathcal{E}$, $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, and $i \geq n + d$, the canonical morphism

$$H^i(F(X)) \to H^i F(\tau^{\geq n} X)$$

is an isomorphism. In fact, the implication $\Rightarrow$ follows from the exact sequence induced from the distinguished triangle (1.5.1.2), since we have $H^i(F(\tau^{n-1}X)) = 0$ in this case. The converse implication is obtained by taking X to be an arbitray complex in $\mathcal{E}^{\leq n-1}$. An equivalent condition is that if $f : X \to Y$ is a morphism in $\mathcal{E}$ such that $H^i(f)$ is an isomorphism for all $i \geq n$, (that is, if f induces an isomorphism $\tau^{\geq n}X \to \tau^{\geq n}Y$), then $H^i(F(f))$ is an isomorphism for all $i \geq n + d$. Similarly, we have $\dim^-(F) \leq d$ if and only if the canonical morphism

$$H^i(F(\tau^{\leq n}X)) \to H^i F(X)$$

is an isomorphism.

In particular, if $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{T}$ is a weak Serre subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ (also considered as a subcategory of $D(\mathcal{A})$), then $\mathcal{E}^{\geq 0} = \mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}^{\leq 0}$, and we have

$$\dim^+(F) \leq d \Leftrightarrow H^i(F(X)) = 0 \text{ for all } i > d \text{ and } X \in \mathcal{T},$$
$$\dim^-(F) \leq d \Leftrightarrow H^i(F(X)) = 0 \text{ for all } i < -d \text{ and } X \in \mathcal{T}.$$

Proposition 1.5.3.4. *If $\mathcal{E} = D^*_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A})$ and F is a triangulated functor, then*

$$\dim^+(F) = \dim^+(F_0), \quad \dim^-(F) = \dim^-(F_0),$$

where F_0 is the restriction of F to $\mathcal{T}$.

Proof. We deal with the case for $\dim^+(F)$, the case for $\dim^-(F)$ can be done similarly. First, we note that $\dim^+(F_0) \leq \dim^+(F)$ since $F'(\mathcal{E}^{\leq n}) \subseteq F'(\mathcal{E}^{\leq n})$ for each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. For the reverse inequality, we assume that $\dim^+(F_0) \leq d < +\infty$ and fix an integer $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. We prove that $H^i(F(X)) = 0$ for any $X \in \mathcal{E}^{\leq n}$ and $i > n + d$ by induction on the number $\nu = \nu(X)$ of non-vanishing cohomology objects of X. Since the case $\nu = 0$ is trivial, we may assume that $\nu \geq 1$. If $\nu = 1$, say $H = H^m(X) \neq 0$ for some $m \leq n$, and we have

$$X \cong \tau^{\leq m}\tau^{\geq m}X \cong H[-m]$$

by (1.5.1.5). Since F is a triangulated functor, we conclude that $F(X) \cong F(H)[-m]$, so by definition of $\dim^+(F_0)$,

$$H^i(F(X)) \cong H^{i-m}(F(H)) = H^{i-m}(F_0(H)) = 0 \quad \text{for } i - m > d$$

whence the conclusion. If $\nu > 1$, we choose an integer s such that there exists integers $p < s \leq q$ with $H^p(X) \neq 0$ and $H^q(X) \neq 0$. Then $\nu(\tau^{\leq s-1}X) < \nu(X)$ and $\nu(\tau^{\geq s}X) < \nu(X)$, so by applying the induction hypothesis, we have

$$H^i(F(\tau^{\leq s-1}X)) = H^i(\tau^{\geq s}X) = 0 \quad \text{for } i > n + d.$$

The inductive step then follows from the long exact sequence induced by the distinguished triangle (1.5.1.2). $\square$

Proposition 1.5.3.5 (Way-out Lemma). *Let $\mathcal{T}$ be a weak Serre subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ and $* \in \{+, b, \varnothing\}$. Consider triangulated functors $F, G : D^*_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A}')$ and a morphism of functors $\eta : F \to G$, so that $\eta(X) : F(X) \to G(X)$ is an isomorphism for any $X \in \mathcal{T}$. If one of the following conditions holds, then η is an isomorphism:*

(i) $* = b$;

(ii) $* = +$ *and F, G are bounded below;*

(iii) $* = -$ *and F, G are bounded above;*

(iv) $* = \varnothing$ *and F, G are bounded.*

Moreover, if $\mathfrak{I}$ (resp. $\mathfrak{P}$) is a subset of $\mathrm{Ob}(\mathcal{T})$ *such that for any $X \in \mathcal{T}$ there exists a monomorphism $X \hookrightarrow I$ with $I \in \mathfrak{I}$ (resp. an epimorphism $P \to X$ with $P \in \mathfrak{P}$), then η is an isomorphism if $\eta(X) : F(X) \to G(X)$ is an isomorphism for each $X \in \mathfrak{I}$, and one of conditions* (i), (ii) *(resp.* (i), (iii)*) is satisfied.*

Proof. We first deal with the case $* = b$. Since η is a morphism of triangulated functors, we see by induction on $|n|$ that $\eta(X[n])$ is an isomorphism for each $X \in \mathcal{T}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. To see that $\eta(X)$ is an isomorphism for any $X \in D^*_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A})$, we may replace X with the isomorphic complex $\tau^{\leq n}(X)$ with some integer n large enough. From (1.5.1.3), we obtain a morphism of triangles, induced by η:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
F(H^n(X)[-n-1]) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & F(\tau^{\leq n-1}X) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & F(\tau^{\leq n}X) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & F(H^n(X)[-n]) \arrow[d] \\
G(H^n(X)[-n-1]) \arrow[r] & G(\tau^{\leq n-1}X) \arrow[r] & G(\tau^{\leq n}X) \arrow[r] & G(H^n(X)[-n])
\end{tikzcd}$$

and then we can conclude the proposition by Proposition 1.4.3.13 and induction on the number of non-vanishing cohomology objects of X (a number which is less for $\tau^{\leq n-1}X$ than for X whenever n is finite).

As for the case of (ii), by Proposition 1.5.1.3, it suffices to show that $\eta(X)$ induces an isomorphism from $H^i(F(X))$ to $H^i(G(X))$ for any $X \in D^+_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A})$ and all $i \in \mathbb{Z}$. For this, we may apply Example 1.5.3.3 to replace X by $\tau^{\leq i+d}X \in D^b_{\mathcal{T}}(\mathcal{A})$ for $d \geq \max\{\dim^-(F), \dim^-(G)\}$, and then we can apply the conclusion of (i). The case for (iii) can be proved similarly.

We now consider the case where $* = \varnothing$. In view of (1.5.1.2), we have a morphism of triangles, induced by η:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
F(\tau^{\geq 0}(X)[-1]) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & F(\tau^{\leq -1}X) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & F(X) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & F(\tau^{\geq 0}(X)) \arrow[d] \\
G(\tau^{\geq 0}(X)[-1]) \arrow[r] & G(\tau^{\leq -1}X) \arrow[r] & G(X) \arrow[r] & G(\tau^{\geq 0}(X))
\end{tikzcd}$$

and by induction on the number of non-vanishing cohomology objects, we may assume that the vertical morphisms, except $F(X) \to G(X)$, are all isomorphisms. It then follows from Proposition 1.4.3.13 that $F(X) \to G(X)$ is also an isomorphism.

Finally, as for the last assertion (we consider the case for $\mathfrak{I}$, the other case can be proved similarly), it suffices to show that $\eta(X)$ is an isomorphism for any $X \in \mathcal{T}$. We take an exact sequence $0 \to X \to I^0 \to I^1 \to \cdots$ so that each $I^i \in \mathfrak{I}$. Then gives rise to a quasi-isomorphism $X \to I$, so it remains to show that $\eta(I)$ is an isomorphism. For this, we consider the stupid truncations $\sigma^{\leq n}I$ and $\sigma^{\geq n+1}I$, which fit into an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \sigma^{\geq n+1} \longrightarrow I \longrightarrow \tau^{\leq n}I \longrightarrow 0$$

and we have a corresponding distinguished triangle in $D(\mathcal{A})$; it then suffices to mimic the proof of (ii). $\square$

1.5.4 Derived functors

Let $\mathcal{A}$, $\mathcal{A}'$ and $\mathcal{A}''$ be abelian categories and $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ be an additive functor. Then F defines naturally a triangulated functor

$$K^*(F) : K^*(\mathcal{A}) \to K^*(\mathcal{A}').$$

For short, we often write F instead of $K^*(F)$. We shall denote by $Q : K^*(\mathcal{A}) \to D^*(\mathcal{A})$ the localization functor, and similarly with Q', Q'', when replacing $\mathcal{A}$ with $\mathcal{A}'$, $\mathcal{A}''$.

Definition 1.5.4.1. Let $* \in \{+, b, \varnothing\}$. We say that the functor F is **right derivable** (or F admits a **right derived functor**) on $K^*(\mathcal{A})$ if the triangulated functor $K^*(F) : K^*(\mathcal{A}) \to K^*(\mathcal{A}')$ is universally right localizable with respect to $N^*(\mathcal{A})$ and $N^*(\mathcal{A}')$. In such a case the localization of F is denoted by R^*F and $H^n \circ R^*F$ is denoted by R^nF. The functor $R^*F : D^*(\mathcal{A}) \to D^*(\mathcal{A}')$ is called the **right derived functor** of F and R^nF the **n-th derived functor** of F.

By definition, the functor F admits a right derived functor on $K^*(\mathcal{A})$ if the ind-object

$$\varinjlim_{\substack{(X\to X')\in \mathrm{Qis} \\ X'\in K^*(\mathcal{A})}} Q' \circ K(F)(X')$$

is representable in $D^*(\mathcal{A}')$ for all $X \in K^*(\mathcal{A})$. In such a case, this object is isomorphic to $R^*F(X)$. Note that R^*F is a triangulated functor from $D^*(\mathcal{A})$ to $D^*(\mathcal{A})$ if it exists, and R^nF is a cohomological functor from $D^*(\mathcal{A})$ to $\mathcal{A}'$. Morever, if RF exists, then R^+F exists and R^+F is the restriction of RF to $D^+(\mathcal{A})$.

Definition 1.5.4.2. Let $\mathcal{J}$ be a full additive subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$. We say for short that $\mathcal{J}$ is ***F*-injective** if the subcategory $K^+(\mathcal{J})$ of $K^+(\mathcal{A})$ is $K^+(F)$-injective with respect to $N^+(\mathcal{A})$ and $N^+(\mathcal{A}')$. We shall also say that $\mathcal{J}$ is injective with respect to F. We define similarly the notion of an F-projective subcategory.

By the definition, $\mathcal{J}$ is F-injective if and only if for any $X \in K^+(\mathcal{A})$, there exists a quasi-isomorphism $X \to Y$ with $Y \in K^+(\mathcal{J})$ and $F(Y)$ is exact for any exact complex $Y \in K^+(\mathcal{J})$. If F is right (resp. left) derivable, an object X of $\mathcal{A}$ such that $R^nF(X) = 0$ (resp. $L^nF(X) = 0$) for all $n \neq 0$ is called **right *F*-acyclic** (resp. **left *F*-acyclic**). If $\mathcal{J}$ is an F-injective subcategory, then any object of $\mathcal{J}$ is right F-acyclic.

From Proposition 1.4.5.4, it is immediate that we have the following result concerning composition of derived functors:

Proposition 1.5.4.3. *Let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ and $F' : \mathcal{A}' \to \mathcal{A}''$ be additive functors of abelian categories. Let $* \in \{+, b, \varnothing\}$ and assume that the right derived functors R^*F, R^*F' and $R^*(F' \circ F)$ exist. Then there is a canonical morphism of functors*

$$R^*(F' \circ F) \to R^*(F') \circ R^*(F). \tag{1.5.4.1}$$

Assume that there exist full additive subcategories $\mathcal{J} \subseteq \mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{J}' \subseteq \mathcal{A}'$ such that $\mathcal{A}$ is F-injective, $\mathcal{J}'$ is F' injective and $F(\mathcal{J}) \subseteq \mathcal{J}'$. Then $\mathcal{J}$ is $F' \circ F$-injective and (1.5.4.1) induces an isomorphism

$$R^+(F' \circ F) \xrightarrow{\sim} R^+F' \circ R^+F.$$

Note that in many cases (even if F is exact), F may not send injective objects of $\mathcal{A}$ to injective objects of $\mathcal{A}'$. This is a reason why the notion of an "F-injective" category is useful.

Proposition 1.5.4.4. *Let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ be an additive functor of abelian categories and let $\mathcal{J}$ be a full additive subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$.*

(a) *If $\mathcal{J}$ is F-injective, then $R^+F : D^+(\mathcal{A}) \to D^+(\mathcal{A}')$ exists and $R^+F(X) \cong F(Y)$ for any quasi-isomorphism $X \to Y$ with $Y \in K^+(\mathcal{J})$.*

(b) *If F is left exact, then $\mathcal{J}$ is F-injective if and only if it satisfies the following conditions:*

  (i) *the category $\mathcal{J}$ is cogenerating in $\mathcal{A}$;*

(ii) *for any exact sequence* $0 \to X' \to X \to X'' \to 0$*, the sequence* $0 \to F(X') \to F(X) \to F(X'') \to 0$ *is exact as soon as* $X \in \mathcal{J}$ *and there exists an exact sequence*

$$0 \longrightarrow Y^0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow Y^n \longrightarrow X' \longrightarrow 0$$

with $Y^i \in \mathcal{J}$*.*

Proof. The first assertion follows from Proposition 1.4.5.3 and (1.4.5.1), so assume that F is left exact. If $\mathcal{J}$ is F-injective, then for $X \in \mathcal{A}$, there exists a quasi-isomorphism $X \to Y$ with $Y \in K^+(\mathcal{J})$. The composition $X \to \ker d_Y^0 \to H^0(Y)$ is then an isomorphism, so $X \to Y^0$ is a monomorphism and this proves that $\mathcal{J}$ is cogenerating in $\mathcal{A}$. By Lemma 1.5.2.1, there then exists an exact sequence $0 \to X'' \to Z^0 \to Z^1 \to \cdots$ with $Z^i \in \mathcal{J}$ for all i. The sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow Y^0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow Y^n \longrightarrow X \longrightarrow Z^0 \longrightarrow Z^1 \longrightarrow \cdots$$

is then exact and belongs to $K^+(\mathcal{J})$, so $F(X) \to F(Z^0) \to F(Z^1)$ is exact. Since F is left exact, $F(X'') \cong \ker(F(Z^0) \to F(Z^1))$ and this implies that $F(X) \to F(X'')$ is an epimorphism.

Conversely, assume the two conditions in (b). By Lemma 1.5.2.1, for any $X \in K^+(\mathcal{A})$ there exists a quasi-isomorphism $X \to Y$ with $Y \in K^+(\mathcal{J})$, so it suffices to show that $F(X)$ is exact if $X \in K^+(\mathcal{J})$ is exact. To this end, we note that for each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, the sequences

$$\cdots \longrightarrow X^{n-2} \longrightarrow X^{n-1} \longrightarrow \ker d_X^n \longrightarrow 0$$

$$0 \longrightarrow \ker d_X^n \longrightarrow X^n \longrightarrow \ker d_X^{n+1} \longrightarrow 0$$

are exact, so by condition (ii), the sequence $0 \to F(\ker d_X^n) \to F(X^n) \to F(\ker d_X^{n+1}) \to 0$ is exact, and this proves that $F(X)$ is exact. □

Remark 1.5.4.5. Note that for $X \in \mathcal{A}$, $R^nF(X) = 0$ for $n < 0$ and assuming that F is left exact, $R^0F(X) \cong F(X)$. Indeed, for $X \in \mathcal{A}$ and any quasi-isomorphism $X \to Y$, the composition $X \to Y \to \tau^{\geq 0}Y$ is a quasi-isomorphism.

Example 1.5.4.6. If $\mathcal{A}$ has enough injectives, then the full subcategory $\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{A}}$ of injective objects of $\mathcal{A}$ is F-injective for any additive functor $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$. Indeed, any exact complex in $\mathrm{Ch}^+(\mathcal{I})$ is homotopic to zero by Lemma 1.5.2.4, whence its image under F. In particular, $R^+F : D^+(\mathcal{A}) \to D^+(\mathcal{A}')$ exists in this case.

We shall now give a sufficient condition in order that $\mathcal{J}$ is F-injective, which is especially useful if the category $\mathcal{A}$ does not have enough injectives.

Theorem 1.5.4.7. *Let* $\mathcal{J}$ *be a full additive subcategory of* $\mathcal{A}$ *and let* $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ *be a left exact functor. Assume that*

(a) $\mathcal{J}$ *is cogenerating in* $\mathcal{A}$*;*

(b) *for any monomorphism* $Y' \hookrightarrow X$ *with* $Y' \in \mathcal{J}$*, there exists an exact sequence* $0 \to Y' \to Y \to Y'' \to 0$ *with* $Y, Y'' \in \mathcal{J}$ *such that* $Y' \to Y$ *factors through* X *and the sequence* $0 \to F(Y') \to F(Y) \to F(Y'') \to 0$ *is exact.*

Then $\mathcal{J}$ *is F-injective.*

Condition (b) of Theorem 1.5.4.7 may be visualized as

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & X \arrow[d, dashed] \\ 0 \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r, dashed] & Y \arrow[r, dashed] & Y'' \arrow[r] & 0 \end{tikzcd}$$

Since this condition is rather intricate, the often consider the following particular case of Theorem 1.5.4.7, which is sufficient for most applications.

Corollary 1.5.4.8. *Let $\mathcal{J}$ be a full additive subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ and let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ be a left exact functor. Assume that*

(a) *$\mathcal{J}$ is cogenerating in $\mathcal{A}$;*

(b) *$\mathcal{J}$ is closed under cokernels of monomorphisms;*

(c) *for any exact sequence $0 \to X' \to X \to X'' \to 0$ in $\mathcal{A}$ with $X', X \in \mathcal{J}$, the sequence $0 \to F(X') \to F(X) \to F(X'') \to 0$ is exact.*

Then $\mathcal{J}$ is F-injective.

Proof. For any monomorphism $Y' \to X$ with $Y' \in \mathcal{J}$, we can embedd X into an object $Y \in \mathcal{J}$ and take Y'' to be the cokernel of Y by Y':

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & X \arrow[d, hook] & & \\ 0 \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r] & Y \arrow[r] & Y'' \arrow[r] & 0 \end{tikzcd}$$

By hypothesis, we have $Y'' \in \mathcal{J}$, and the sequence $0 \to F(X') \to F(X) \to F(X'') \to 0$ is exact, so we can apply Theorem 1.5.4.7. □

Corollary 1.5.4.9. *Let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ be a left exact functor of abelian categories and let $\mathcal{J}$ be an F-injective full subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$. Let $\mathcal{J}_F$ be the full subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ consisting of right F-acyclic objects, then $\mathcal{J}_F$ contains $\mathcal{J}$ and $\mathcal{J}_F$ satisfies the conditions of Corollary 1.5.4.8. In particular, $\mathcal{J}_F$ is F-injective.*

Proof. Since $\mathcal{J}_F$ contains $\mathcal{J}$, $\mathcal{J}_F$ is cogenerating. Consider an exact sequence $0 \to X' \to X \to X'' \to 0$ in $\mathcal{A}$ with $X', X \in \mathcal{J}_F$. The exact sequences $R^iF(X) \to R^iF(X'') \to R^{i+1}F(X')$ for $i \geq 0$ imply that $R^iF(X'') = 0$ for $i > 0$. Moreover, there is an exact sequence $0 \to F(X') \to F(X) \to F(X'') \to 0$ since $R^1F(X') = 0$. □

Therefore, a full additive subcategory $\mathcal{J}$ of $\mathcal{A}$ is F-injective if and only if it is cogenerating and any object of $\mathcal{J}$ is F-acyclic (assuming the right derivability of F). Note that even if F is right derivable, there may not exist an F-injective subcategory, since we do not know that whether the subcategory of F-acyclic objects is cogenerating.

Example 1.5.4.10. Let A be a ring and let N be a right A-module. The full additive subcategory of $\mathbf{Mod}(A)$ consisting of flat A-modules is $(N \otimes_A -)$-projective. In fact, this subcategory satisfies the dual conditions of Corollary 1.5.4.8.

We now turn to the proof of Theorem 1.5.4.7, which we decompose into several lemmas.

Lemma 1.5.4.11. *With the assumptions of Theorem 1.5.4.7, let $0 \to Y' \to X \to X''$ be an exact sequence in $\mathcal{A}$ with $Y' \in \mathcal{J}$. Then the sequence $0 \to F(Y') \to F(X) \to F(X'')$ is exact.*

Proof. Choose an exact sequence $0 \to Y' \to Y \to Y''$ as in Theorem 1.5.4.7. We get the commutative exact diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & X \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X'' \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & 0 \\ 0 \arrow[r] & Y' \arrow[r] & Y \arrow[r] & Y'' \arrow[r] & 0 \end{tikzcd}$$

where the right square is Cartesian. Since F is left exact, it transforms this square to a Cartesian square and the bottom row to an exact row. Hence, the result follows from ([**?**] lemma 8.3.11). □

Lemma 1.5.4.12. *With the assumptions of Theorem 1.5.4.7, let $X^\bullet \in \mathrm{Ch}^+(\mathcal{A})$ be an exact complex, and assume $X^i = 0$ for $i < n$ and $X^n \in \mathcal{J}$. There exist an exact complex $Y^\bullet \in \mathrm{Ch}^+(\mathcal{J})$ and a morphism $f : X^\bullet \to Y^\bullet$ such that $Y^i = 0$ for $i < n$, $f^n : X^n \to Y^n$ is an isomorphism, and $\operatorname{im} d_Y^i \in \mathcal{J}$ for all i.*

Proof. We argue by induction. By the hypothesis of Theorem 1.5.4.7, there exists a commutative exact diagram:

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & X^n \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\sim"] & X^{n+1} \arrow[d] & & \\ 0 \arrow[r] & Y^n \arrow[r] & Y^{n+1} \arrow[r] & Z^{n+2} \arrow[r] & 0 \end{tikzcd}$$

with Y^{n+1}, Z^{n+2} in $\mathcal{J}$. Now suppose that we have already constructed a diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & X^n \arrow[r] \arrow[d, "\sim"] & \cdots \arrow[r] & X^m \arrow[d] & & \\ 0 \arrow[r] & Y^n \arrow[r] & \cdots \arrow[r] & Y^m \arrow[r] & Z^{m+1} \arrow[r] & 0 \end{tikzcd}$$

where the bottom row is exact and belongs to $\mathrm{Ch}^+(\mathcal{J})$, and $\operatorname{im} d_Y^i$ belongs to $\mathcal{J}$ for $n \leq i \leq m-1$. Define $W^{m+1} = X^{m+1} \oplus_{\operatorname{coker} d_X^{m-1}} Z^{m+1}$, so that we have a Cartesian exact diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & \operatorname{coker} d_X^{m-1} \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X^{m+1} \arrow[d] \\ 0 \arrow[r] & Z^{m+1} \arrow[r] & W^{m+1} \end{tikzcd}$$

By the hypotheses, there exists an exact commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & Z^{m+1} \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & W^{m+1} \arrow[d] & & \\ 0 \arrow[r] & Z^{m+1} \arrow[r] & Y^{m+1} \arrow[r] & Z^{m+2} \arrow[r] & 0 \end{tikzcd}$$

with Y^{m+1} and Z^{m+2} in $\mathcal{J}$. If we define d_Y^m to be the composition $Y^m \to Z^{m+1} \to Y^{m+1}$, then $\operatorname{im} d_Y^m \cong Z^{m+1} \in \mathcal{J}$, and this completes the induction process. $\square$

Proof of Theorem 1.5.4.7. Let $X^\bullet \in \mathrm{Ch}^+(\mathcal{J})$ be an exact complex, we have to prove that $F(X^\bullet)$ is exact. Let us show by induction on $m-n$ that $H^m(F(X^\bullet)) = 0$ if $X \in \mathrm{Ch}^{\geq n}(\mathcal{J})$. If $m < n$, this is clear, so we may assume that $m \geq n$. By Lemma 1.5.4.12, there exists a morphism of complexes $f : X^\bullet \to Y^\bullet$ in $\mathrm{Ch}^+(\mathcal{J})$ such that $Y^\bullet \in \mathrm{Ch}^{\geq n}(\mathcal{J})$, $f^n : X^n \to Y^n$ is an isomorphism and $F(Y^\bullet)$ is exact. Let $\sigma^{\geq n+1}$ denote the stupid truncated complexes and W denote the mapping cone of the morphism

$$\sigma^{\geq n+1}(f) : \sigma^{\geq n+1}X^\bullet \to \sigma^{\geq n+1}Y^\bullet.$$

Then $W^i = (\sigma^{\geq n+1}X^\bullet)^{i+1} \oplus (\sigma^{\geq n+1}Y^\bullet)^i = 0$ for $i < n$, and we have a distinguished triangle in $K(\mathcal{J})$:

$$W \longrightarrow M(f) \longrightarrow M(X^n[-n] \to Y^n[-n]) \longrightarrow W[1].$$

Since $X^n \to Y^n$ is an isomorphism, the mapping cone $M(X^n[-n] \to Y^n[-n])$ is exact and therefore $W \to M(f)$ is an isomorphism in $K(\mathcal{A})$. Applying the functor F, we then obtain an isomorphism $F(W) \cong F(M(f))$ in $K(\mathcal{A}')$, so $H^i(F(W)) \cong H^i(F(M(f)))$ for each i. On the other hand, there is a distinguished triangle in $K^+(\mathcal{A}')$:

$$F(X) \longrightarrow F(Y) \longrightarrow F(M(f)) \longrightarrow F(X)[1]$$

and $F(Y)$ is exact by our hypothesis, whence $H^m(F(X)) \cong H^{m-1}(F(M(f))) \cong H^{m-1}(F(W))$. Since W is an exact complex and belongs to $\mathrm{Ch}^{\geq n}(\mathcal{J})$, the induction hypothesis implies that $H^{m-1}(F(W)) = 0$, so we conclude that $H^m(F(X)) = 0$. $\square$

1.5.4.1 Derived projective limit As an application of Theorem 1.5.4.7 we shall discuss the existence of the derived functor of projective limits. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian $\mathcal{U}$-category. Recall that $\mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$ is an abelian category admitting small projective limits, and small filtrant projective limits as well as small products are exact. Assume that $\mathcal{A}$ admits small projective limits. Then the natural exact functor $\mathcal{A} \to \mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$ admits a right adjoint

$$\pi_{\mathcal{A}} : \mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{A}$$

defined as follows: if $\beta : I^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathcal{A}$ is a functor with I small and filtrant, then $\pi_{\mathcal{A}}$ transforms $``\varprojlim"\beta$ (as a pro-object) to the limit $\varprojlim \beta$ in $\mathcal{A}$. The functor $\pi_{\mathcal{A}}$ is left exact and we shall give a condition in order that it is right derivable.

For a full additive subcategory $\mathcal{J}$ of $\mathcal{A}$, we define a full additive subcategory $\mathcal{J}_{\mathrm{pro}}$ of $\mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$ by

$$\mathcal{J}_{\mathrm{pro}} = \{X \in \mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A}) : X \cong ``\prod_{i \in I}" X_i \text{ for a small set } I \text{ and } X_i \in \mathcal{J}\}.$$

Here the product $``\prod"$ is taken in the category $\mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$, so for $X_i, Y \in \mathcal{A}$, we have a canonical bijection

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})}(``\prod_{i \in I}" X_i, Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} \bigoplus_{i \in I} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X_i, Y).$$

Proposition 1.5.4.13. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category admitting small projective limits and let $\mathcal{J}$ be a full additive subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ satisfying:*

(a) *$\mathcal{J}$ is cogenerating in $\mathcal{A}$;*

(b) *$\mathcal{J}$ is closed under cokernels of monomorphisms;*

(c) *if $0 \to Y_i' \to Y_i \to Y_i'' \to 0$ is a family of exact sequences in $\mathcal{J}$ indexed by a small set I, then the sequence $0 \to Y_i' \to Y_i \to Y_i'' \to 0$ is exact.*

Then the category $\mathcal{J}_{\mathrm{pro}}$ is $\pi_{\mathcal{A}}$-injective and the left exact functor $\pi_{\mathcal{A}}$ admits a right derived functor

$$R^+\pi_{\mathcal{A}} : D^+(\mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})) \to D^+(\mathcal{A})$$

which satisfies $R^n\pi_{\mathcal{A}}(``\prod_i" X_i) = 0$ for $n > 0$ and $X_i \in \mathcal{J}$. Moreover, the composition

$$D^+(\mathcal{A}) \longrightarrow D^+(\mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})) \xrightarrow{R^+\pi_{\mathcal{A}}} D^+(\mathcal{A})$$

is isomorphic to the identity.

Proof. We shall verify the conditions of Theorem 1.5.4.7. The category $\mathcal{J}_{\mathrm{pro}}$ is cogenerating in $\mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$ since for $A = ``\varprojlim"_{i \in I} \alpha(i) \in \mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$, we obtain a monomorphism $A \hookrightarrow ``\prod_i" X_i$ by choosing a monomorphism $\alpha(i) \hookrightarrow X_i$ with $X_i \in \mathcal{J}$ for each $i \in I$. Now consider a monomorphism $Y \hookrightarrow A$ in $\mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$ with $A \in \mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$ and $Y = ``\prod_i" Y_i$, $Y_i \in \mathcal{J}$. Applying the dual version of ([?] proposition 8.6.9), for each i we can find $X_i \in \mathcal{A}$ and a commutative exact diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & A \arrow[d] \\ 0 \arrow[r] & Y_i \arrow[r] & X_i \end{tikzcd}$$

Since $\mathcal{J}$ is cogenerating, we may assume that $X_i \in \mathcal{J}$. Let $Z_i = \mathrm{coker}(Y_i \to X_i)$, which is in $\mathcal{J}$ by hypothesis. By hypothesis, functor $\prod$ is exact on $\mathcal{J}$, so we obtain a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 \arrow[r] & Y \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & A \arrow[d] & & \\ 0 \arrow[r] & ``\prod_i" Y_i \arrow[r] & ``\prod_i" X_i \arrow[r] & ``\prod_i" Z_i \arrow[r] & 0 \end{tikzcd}$$

with exact rows. Applying $\pi_{\mathcal{A}}$ to the second row, we then obtain the sequence $0 \to \prod_i Y_i \to \prod_i X_i \to \prod_i Z_i \to 0$ in $\mathcal{A}$, which is exact by hypothesis (c). By Theorem 1.5.4.7, we then conclude that $\mathcal{J}_{\mathrm{pro}}$ is $\pi_{\mathcal{A}}$-injective, so $\pi_{\mathcal{A}}$ admits a right derived functor (Proposition 1.4.5.3), and we have $R^n\pi_{\mathcal{A}}(``\prod_i" X_i) = 0$ for $n > 0$ and $X_i \in \mathcal{J}$.

Finally, by assumption $\mathcal{J}$ is injective with respect to the exact functor $\mathcal{A} \to \mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$. Since the functor $\mathcal{A} \to \mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$ sends $\mathcal{J}$ to $\mathcal{J}_{\mathrm{pro}}$, the last assertion follows from Proposition 1.5.4.3. $\square$

Corollary 1.5.4.14. *Let $\mathcal{J}$ be a full additive subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ satisfying the conditions of Proposition 1.5.4.13. If (X_n) is a projective system in $\mathcal{J}$ indexed by $\mathbb{N}$ and $X = \text{"}\varprojlim\text{"} X_n$, then $R^p\pi_{\mathcal{A}}(X) = 0$ for $p > 1$, and we have a canonical isomorphism*

$$R^1\pi_{\mathcal{A}}(X) \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{coker}\left(\prod_n X_n \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} \prod_n X_n\right)$$

where $\Delta_X := T_X - \mathrm{id} : \prod_n X_n \to \prod_n X_n$.

Proof. We have an exact sequence in $\mathrm{Pro}(\mathcal{A})$:

$$0 \longrightarrow \text{"}\varprojlim\text{"}_n X_n \longrightarrow \text{"}\prod\text{"}_n X_n \xrightarrow{\Delta_X} \text{"}\prod\text{"}_n X_n \longrightarrow 0$$

Applying the functor $R^+\pi_{\mathcal{A}}$, we then get a long exact sequence and the results follows since $R^p\pi_{\mathcal{A}}(\prod_n X_n) = 0$ for $p > 0$. □

Example 1.5.4.15. If A is a ring and $\mathcal{A} = \mathbf{Mod}(A)$, we may choose $\mathcal{J} = \mathcal{A}$ in Proposition 1.5.4.13. In fact, for a family of objects $(X_i)_{i\in I}$ in $\mathcal{A}$, the product $\text{"}\prod\text{"}_i X_i$ can be considered as the limit of the functor $\alpha : I \to \mathcal{A}$ with I being considered as a discrete category.

1.5.4.2 Derived bifunctors We shall now apply the previous results to bifunctors between abelian categories. The most important examples in mind will be Hom and tensor functors.

Theorem 1.5.4.16. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category and $X, Y \in D(\mathcal{A})$. Assume that the functor*

$$\mathrm{Hom}^\bullet_{\mathcal{A}} : K(\mathcal{A})^{\mathrm{op}} \times K(\mathcal{A}) \to K(\mathbf{Mod}(\mathbb{Z})), \quad (X', Y') \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}^\bullet_{\mathcal{A}}(X', Y')$$

is right localizable at (X, Y), then for any $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, we have

$$R^n\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y[n]).$$

Proof. By hypothesis, we have

$$R\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} \varinjlim_{\substack{(X'\to X)\in \mathrm{Qis},\\ (Y\to Y')\in\mathrm{Qis}}} \mathrm{Hom}^\bullet_{\mathcal{A}}(X', Y').$$

Applying the functor H^n and recalling that $\varinjlim$ commutes with H^n, we conclude from ([**?**] Proposition 11.7.3) that

$$R^n\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y) \cong \varinjlim H^n(\mathrm{Hom}^\bullet_{\mathcal{A}}(X', Y')) \cong \varinjlim \mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X', Y'[n]) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y[n]).$$ □

Consider now three abelian categories $\mathcal{A}$, $\mathcal{A}'$, $\mathcal{A}''$ and an additive bifunctor

$$F : \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{A}' \to \mathcal{A}''.$$

By ([**?**] Proposition 11.6.3), the triangulated functor

$$K^+F : K^+(\mathcal{A}) \times K^+(\mathcal{A}') \to K^+(\mathcal{A}'')$$

is naturally defined by setting

$$K^+F(X, X') = \mathrm{Tot}(F(X, X')).$$

Similarly to the case of functors, if the triangulated bifunctor K^+F is universally right localizable with respect to $(N^+(\mathcal{A}) \times N^+(\mathcal{A}'), N^+(\mathcal{A}''))$, then F is said to be **right derivable** and its localization is denoted by R^+F. We set $R^nF = H^n \circ R^+F$ and call it the n-th **derived bifunctor** of F.

Definition 1.5.4.17. Let $\mathcal{J}$ and $\mathcal{J}'$ be full additive subcategories of $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{A}'$ respectively. We say for short that $(\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{J}')$ is ***F*-injective** if $(K^+(\mathcal{J}), K^+(\mathcal{J}'))$ is K^+F-injective.

Proposition 1.5.4.18. *Let $\mathcal{J}$ and $\mathcal{J}'$ be full additive subcategories of $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{A}'$ respectively. Assume that $(\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{J}')$ is F-injective, then F is right derivable and for $(X, X') \in D^+(\mathcal{A}) \times D^+(\mathcal{A}')$ we have*

$$R^+F(X, X') \cong Q'' \circ K^+F(Y, Y')$$

for $(X \to Y) \in \mathrm{Qis}$ and $(X' \to Y') \in \mathrm{Qis}$ with $Y \in K^+(\mathcal{J})$ and $Y' \in K^+(\mathcal{J}')$.

Proof. It suffices to apply Proposition 1.4.5.6 to the functor $Q'' \circ K^+F$. $\square$

Proposition 1.5.4.19. *Let $\mathcal{J}$ and $\mathcal{J}'$ be full additive subcategories of $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{A}'$ respectively. Assume that*

(a) *for any $Y \in \mathcal{J}$, $\mathcal{J}'$ is $F(Y, -)$-injective;*

(b) *for any $Y' \in \mathcal{J}'$, $\mathcal{J}$ is $F(-, Y')$-injective.*

Then $(\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{J}')$ is F-injective.

Proof. Let $(Y, Y') \in K^+(\mathcal{J}) \times K^+(\mathcal{J}')$. If either Y or Y' is quasi-isomorphic to zero, then $\mathrm{Tot}(F(Y, Y'))$ is quasi-isomorphic to zero by ([?] Proposition 12.5.5), so $(\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{J}')$ is F-injective. $\square$

Corollary 1.5.4.20. *Let $\mathcal{J}$ be a full additive cogenerating subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ and assume:*

(a) *for any $X \in \mathcal{J}$, $F(X, -)$ is exact;*

(b) *for any $X' \in \mathcal{A}'$, $\mathcal{J}$ is $F(-, X')$-injective.*

Then F is right derivable and for $X \in K^+(\mathcal{A})$, $X' \in K^+(\mathcal{A}')$,

$$R^+F(X, X') \cong Q'' \circ K^+F(Y, X')$$

for any $(X \to Y) \in \mathrm{Qis}$ with $Y \in K^+(\mathcal{J})$. In particular, for $X \in \mathcal{A}$ and $X' \in \mathcal{A}'$, $R^+F(X, X')$ is the derived functor of $F(-, X')$ calculated at X, that is, we have

$$R^+F(X, X') = (R^+F(-, X'))(X).$$

Proof. The first assertion follows from Proposition 1.5.4.19 by setting $\mathcal{J}' = \mathcal{A}'$, and the second one follows from Corollary 1.4.5.7. $\square$

Corollary 1.5.4.21. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category and assume that there are subcategories $\mathcal{P}, \mathcal{J}$ in $\mathcal{A}$ such that $(\mathcal{P}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathcal{J})$ is injective with respect to the functor $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}$. Then the functor $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}$ admits a right derived functor $R^+\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}} : D^-(\mathcal{A})^{\mathrm{op}} \times D^+(\mathcal{A}) \to D^+(\mathbb{Z})$. In particular, $D^b(\mathcal{A})$ is a $\mathcal{U}$-category.*

Proof. The first assertion follows from Proposition 1.5.4.19, and the second one is a concequence of Theorem 1.5.4.16, since $R^0\mathrm{Hom}$ takes its values in $\mathcal{U}$-sets. $\square$

Example 1.5.4.22. Assume that $\mathcal{A}$ has enough injectives. Then by Corollary 1.5.4.20, the derived Hom functor

$$R^+\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}} : D^-(\mathcal{A})^{\mathrm{op}} \times D^+(\mathcal{A}) \to D^+(\mathbb{Z})$$

exists and may be calculated as follows. Let $X \in D^-(\mathcal{A})$ and $Y \in D^+(\mathcal{A})$. Then there exists a quasi-isomorphism $Y \to I$ in $K^+(\mathcal{A})$, with the I^i's being injective, and

$$R^+\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}^\bullet_{\mathcal{A}}(X, I).$$

If $\mathcal{A}$ has enough projectives, then $R^+\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}$ also exists, and for a quasi-isomorphism $P \to X$ with P^i's being projective, we have

$$R^+\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}^\bullet_{\mathcal{A}}(P, Y).$$

These isomorphisms hold in $D^+(\mathbb{Z})$, which means $R^+\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y) \in D^+(\mathbb{Z})$ is represented by the simple complex associated with the double complex $\mathrm{Hom}^{\bullet,\bullet}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, I)$ or $\mathrm{Hom}^{\bullet,\bullet}_{\mathcal{A}}(P, Y)$.

Example 1.5.4.23. Let A be a k-algebra, with k being a ring. Since the category $\mathbf{Mod}(A)$ has enough projectives, the left derived functor of the functor $- \otimes_A -$ is well defined:

$$- \otimes^L_A - : D^-(A^{\mathrm{op}}) \times D^-(A) \to D^-(k).$$

This functor may by calculated as follows:

$$N \otimes^L_A M \cong \mathrm{Tot}(N \otimes_A P) \cong \mathrm{Tot}(Q \otimes_A M) \cong \mathrm{Tot}(Q \otimes_A P)$$

where P is a complex of projective A-modules quasi-isomorphic to M and Q is a complex of projective A^{op}-modules quasi-isomorphic to N. A classical notation is $\mathrm{Tor}^A_n(N, M) := H_n(N \otimes^L_A M)$.

Proposition 1.5.4.24. *Let $F : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}' : G$ be an adjoint pair of additive functors. Assume that $\mathcal{A}$ has enough projectives and $\mathcal{A}'$ has enough injective objects, then there exists a canonical isomorphism in $D^+(\mathbb{Z})$:*

$$R\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}'}(L^-F(X), Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} R\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}'}(X, R^+G(Y)),$$

where $X \in D^-(\mathcal{A})$ and $Y \in D^+(\mathcal{A}')$. In particular, we have canonical isomorphisms

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A}')}(L^-F(X), Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, R^+G(Y))$$

Proof. We take a projective resolution $P \to X$ and an injective resolution $Y \to I$. By Example 1.5.4.22, we have

$$R\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}'}(L^-F(X), Y) \cong \mathrm{Hom}^\bullet(K^-F(P), I).$$

By the adjointness, in view of the definition of K^-F and the Hom complex, the RHS is isomorphic to $\mathrm{Hom}^\bullet(P, K^+G(I))$, which is $R\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, R^+G(Y))$. The last assertion follows from Theorem 1.5.4.16 by taking H^0. □

Note that the functors L^-F and R^+G are not adjoint functors, since they are functors between different pair of categories. This problem shall be resolved after we introduce the unbounded version of derived functors.

1.6 Unbounded derived categories

In this section we study the unbounded derived categories of Grothendieck categories. We prove the existence of enough homotopically injective objects in order to define unbounded right derived functors, and we prove that these triangulated categories satisfy the hypotheses of the Brown representability theorem. We also study unbounded derived functors in particular for pairs of adjoint functors. We start this study in the framework of abelian categories with translation, then we apply it to the case of the categories of unbounded complexes in abelian categories.

1.6.1 Derived categories of abelian categories with translation

Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation. Recall that, denoting by $\mathcal{N}$ the triangulated subcategory of the homotopy category $K_c(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of objects X quasi-isomorphic to 0, the derived category $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ of $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ is the localization $K_c(\mathcal{A})/\mathcal{N}$. Also recall that an object X is quasi-isomorphic to 0 if and only the sequence

$$T^{-1}(X) \xrightarrow{T^{-1}(d_X)} X \xrightarrow{d_X} T(X)$$

is exact.

For $X \in \mathcal{A}_c$, the differential $d_X : X \to T(X)$ is a morphism in $\mathcal{A}_c$, so its cohomology $H(X)$ is regarded as an object of $\mathcal{A}_c$ and similarly for $\ker d_X$ and $\operatorname{im} d_X$. Note that their differentials vanish.

Proposition 1.6.1.1. *Assume that $\mathcal{A}$ admits direct sums indexed by a set I and that such direct sums are exact. Then $\mathcal{A}_c$, $K_c(\mathcal{A})$ and $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ admit such direct sums and the two functors $\mathcal{A}_c \to K_c(\mathcal{A})$ and $K_c(\mathcal{A}) \to D_c(\mathcal{A})$ commute with such direct sums.*

Proof. The result concerning $\mathcal{A}_c$ and $K_c(\mathcal{A})$ is immediate, and that concerning $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ follows from Proposition 1.4.4.8. □

For an object X of $\mathcal{A}$, we denote by $M(X)$ the mapping cone of $\mathrm{id}_{T^{-1}(X)}$, regarding $T^{-1}(X)$ as an object of $\mathcal{A}_c$ with zero differential. Hence $M(X)$ is the object $X \oplus T^{-1}(X)$ of $\mathcal{A}_c$ with the differential

$$d_{M(X)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ \mathrm{id}_X & 0 \end{pmatrix} : X \oplus T^{-1}(X) \to T(X) \oplus X.$$

The functor $M : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}_c$ is easily seen to be exact, and M is a left adjoint of the forgetful functor $\mathcal{A}_c \to \mathcal{A}$, as seen by the following lemma.

Lemma 1.6.1.2. *For $Y \in \mathcal{A}$ and $X \in \mathcal{A}_c$, we have the isomorphism*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}_c}(M(Y), X) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(Y, X)$$

Proof. Any morphism $(u, v) : M(Y) \to X$ in $\mathcal{A}_c$ satisfies $d_X \circ (u, v) = T(u, v) \circ d_{M(X)}$, which reads as $d_X \circ u = Tv$ and $d_X \circ v = 0$. Therefore, it is completely determined by $u : Y \to X$. □

Proposition 1.6.1.3. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a Grothendieck category. Then $\mathcal{A}_c$ is again a Grothendieck category.*

Proof. The category $\mathcal{A}_c$ is abelian and admits small inductive limits, and small filtrant inductive limits in $\mathcal{A}_c$ are clearly exact. Moreover, if G is a generator in $\mathcal{A}$, then $M(G)$ is a generator in $\mathcal{A}_c$ by Lemma 1.6.1.2. □

Definition 1.6.1.4. Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation.

- An object $I \in K_c(\mathcal{A})$ is called **homotopically injective** if $\mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(X, I) = 0$ for any $X \in K_c(\mathcal{A})$ that is quasi-isomorphic to 0.
- An object $P \in K_c(\mathcal{A})$ is called **homotopically projective** if $\mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(P, X) = 0$ for any $X \in K_c(\mathcal{A})$ that is quasi-isomorphic to 0.

We shall denote by $K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A})$ the full subcategory of $K_c(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of homotopically injective objects and by $\iota : K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A}) \to K_c(\mathcal{A})$ the inclusion functor. Similarly, we denote by $K_{c,hp}(\mathcal{A})$ the full subcategory of $K_c(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of homotopically projective objects. Note that $K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A})$ is obviously a full triangulated subcategory of $K_c(\mathcal{A})$.

Lemma 1.6.1.5. *Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation. If $I \in K_c(\mathcal{A})$ is homotopically injective, then*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(X, I) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{D_c(\mathcal{A})}(X, I)$$

for all $X \in K_c(\mathcal{A})$.

Proof. Let $X \in K_c(\mathcal{A})$ and $X' \to X$ be a quasi-isomorphism. Then for $I \in K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A})$, the morphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(X, I) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(X', I)$$

is an isomorphism since there is a distinguished triangle $X' \to X \to N \to T(X)$ with N quasi-isomorphic to zero and

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(N, I) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(T^{-1}(N), I) = 0.$$

Therefore, for any $X \in K_c(\mathcal{A})$ and $I \in K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A})$, we have

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D_c(\mathcal{A})}(X, I) \cong \varinjlim_{(X' \to X) \in \mathrm{Qis}} \mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(X', I) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(X, I). \qquad \square$$

We now introduce the following notation:

$$QM = \{f \in \mathrm{Mor}(\mathcal{A}_c) : f \text{ is both a quasi-isomorphism and a monomorphism}\}.$$

Recall that an object I of $\mathcal{A}_c$ is called QM-injective if for any morphism $f : X \to Y$ in QM, the induced map

$$f^* : \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}_c}(Y, I) \to \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}_c}(X, I)$$

is surjective.

Proposition 1.6.1.6. *Let $I \in \mathcal{A}_c$, then I is QM-injective if and only if it satisfies the following conditions:*

(a) *I is homotopically injective,*

(b) *I is injective as an object of $\mathcal{A}$.*

Proof. □

We shall now prove the following theorem, which asserts that any Grothendieck category has enough QM-injective objects.

Theorem 1.6.1.7. *Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation where $\mathcal{A}$ is a Grothendieck category. Then, for any $X \in \mathcal{A}_c$, there exists $u : X \to I$ such that $u \in QM$ and I is QM-injective.*

Corollary 1.6.1.8. *Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation where $\mathcal{A}$ is a Grothendieck category. Then for any $X \in \mathcal{A}_c$, there exists a quasi-isomorphism $X \to I$ such that I is homotopically injective.*

Corollary 1.6.1.9. *Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation where $\mathcal{A}$ is a Grothendieck category. Then*

(a) *the localization functor $Q : K_c(\mathcal{A}) \to D_c(\mathcal{A})$ induces an equivalence $Q \circ \iota : K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A}) \xrightarrow{\sim} D_c(\mathcal{A})$;*

(b) *the category $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ is a $\mathcal{U}$-category;*

(c) *the functor $Q : K_c(\mathcal{A}) \to D_c(\mathcal{A})$ admits a right adjoint $R : D_c(\mathcal{A}) \to K_c(\mathcal{A})$ so that $Q \circ R \cong \mathrm{id}$, and R is the composition of $\iota : K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A}) \to K_c(\mathcal{A})$ and a quasi-inverse of $Q \circ \iota$;*

(d) *for any triangulated category D, any triangulated functor $F : K_c(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{D}$ admits a right localization $RF : D_c(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{D}$, and $RF \cong F \circ R$.*

Proof. The functor $Q : K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A})$ is fully faithful by Lemma 1.6.1.5 and essentially surjective by Corollary 1.6.1.8, whence assertion (a), and (b), (c) follow immediately: in fact, for $X \in K_c(\mathcal{A})$ and $Y \in D_c(\mathcal{A})$, we have $(Q \circ \iota)^{-1}(Y) \in K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A})$, so by Lemma 1.6.1.5,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(X, \iota \circ (Q \circ \iota)^{-1}(Y)) &\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{K_c(\mathcal{A})}(X, (Q \circ \iota)^{-1}(Y)) \\ &\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D_c(\mathcal{A})}(Q(X), (Q \circ \iota) \circ (Q \circ \iota)^{-1}(Y)) \\ &\cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D_c(\mathcal{A})}(Q(X), Y).\end{aligned}$$

Finally, (d) follows from Proposition 1.4.2.2 and (c). □

1.6.2 The Brown representability theorem

We shall show that the hypotheses of the Brown representability theorem are satisfied for $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ when $\mathcal{A}$ is a Grothendieck abelian category with translation. Note that $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ admits small direct sums and the localization functor $Q : K_c(\mathcal{A}) \to D_c(\mathcal{A})$ commutes with such direct sums by Proposition 1.6.1.1.

Theorem 1.6.2.1. *Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation where $\mathcal{A}$ is a Grothendieck category. Then the triangulated category $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ admits small direct sums and a system of t-generators.*

Applying ([**?**] corollary 10.5.2 and corollary 10.5.3), we then obtain the following corollaries.

Corollary 1.6.2.2. *Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation where $\mathcal{A}$ is a Grothendieck category. Let $G : D^c(\mathcal{A})^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathbf{Mod}(\mathbb{Z})$ be a cohomological functor which commutes with small products, then G is representable.*

Corollary 1.6.2.3. *Let $(\mathcal{A}, T)$ be an abelian category with translation where $\mathcal{A}$ is a Grothendieck category. Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category and $F : D_c(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated functor. Assume that F commutes with small direct sums, then F admits a right adjoint.*

We shall prove a slightly more general statement than Theorem 1.6.2.1. Let $\mathcal{I}$ be a full subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ closed by subobjects, quotients and extensions in $\mathcal{A}$, and also by small direct sums. Let us denote by $D_{c,\mathcal{I}}(\mathcal{A})$ the full subcategory of $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of objects $X \in D_c(\mathcal{A})$ such that $H(X) \in \mathcal{I}$. Then $D_{c,\mathcal{I}}(\mathcal{A})$ is a full triangulated subcategory of $D_c(\mathcal{A})$ closed by small direct sums.

Proposition 1.6.2.4. *The triangulated category $D_{c,\mathcal{I}}(\mathcal{A})$ admits a system of t-generators.*

1.6.3 Unbounded derived category

From now on and until the end of this section, we consider abelian categories $\mathcal{A}$, $\mathcal{A}'$, etc. We shall apply the results in the preceding paragraphs to the abelian category with translation given by shifting. Then we have $\mathcal{A}_c \cong \mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$, $K_c(\mathcal{A}) \cong K(\mathcal{A})$ and $D_c(\mathcal{A}) \cong D(\mathcal{A})$. Assume that $\mathcal{A}$ admits direct sums indexed by a set I and that such direct sums are exact. Then, clearly, $\mathcal{A}_c$ has the same properties, so it follows from Proposition 1.6.1.1 that $\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$, $K(\mathcal{A})$ and $D(\mathcal{A})$ also admit such direct sums and the two functors $\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \to K(\mathcal{A})$ and $K(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A})$ commute with such direct sums.

We shall write $K_{hi}(\mathcal{A})$ for $K_{c,hi}(\mathcal{A})$, so $K_{hi}(\mathcal{A})$ is the full subcategory of $K(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of homotopically injective objects. Let us denote by $\iota : K_{hi}(\mathcal{A}) \to K(\mathcal{A})$ the inclusion functor. Similarly we denote by $K_{hp}(\mathcal{A})$ the full subcategory of $K(\mathcal{A})$ consisting of homotopically projective objects. Recall that $I \in K(\mathcal{A})$ is homotopically injective if and only if $\mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X, I) = 0$ for all $X \in K(\mathcal{A})$ that is quasi-isomorphism to 0. Note that an object $I \in K^+(\mathcal{A})$ whose components are all injective is homotopically injective in view of Lemma 1.5.2.4.

Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a Grothendieck abelian category. Then $\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ is also a Grothendieck category, so applying Corollary 1.6.1.8 and Theorem 1.6.2.1, we get the following theorem.

Theorem 1.6.3.1. *Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a Grothendieck category.*

(i) *if $I \in K(\mathcal{A})$ is homotopically injective, then we have an isomorphism*

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X, I) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, I)$$

for any $X \in K(\mathcal{A})$;

(ii) *for any $X \in \mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$, there exists a quasi-isomorphism $X \to I$ such that I is homotopically injective;*

(iii) *the localization functor $Q : K(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A})$ induces an equivalence $K_{hi}(\mathcal{A}) \xrightarrow{\sim} D(\mathcal{A})$;*

(iv) *the category $D(\mathcal{A})$ is a $\mathcal{U}$-category;*

(v) *the functor $Q : K(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A})$ admits a right adjoint $R : D(\mathcal{A}) \to K(\mathcal{A})$ such that $Q \circ R \cong \mathrm{id}$ and R is the composition of $\iota : K_{hi}(\mathcal{A}) \to K(\mathcal{A})$ and a quasi-inverse of $Q \circ \iota$;*

(vi) *for any triangulated category $\mathcal{D}$, any triangulated functor $F : K(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{D}$ admits a right localization $RF : D(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{D}$ and $RF \cong F \circ R$;*

(vii) *the triangulated category $D(\mathcal{A})$ admits small direct sums and a system of t-generators;*

(viii) *any cohomological functor $G : D(\mathcal{A})^{\mathrm{op}} \to \mathbf{Mod}(\mathbb{Z})$ is representable as soon as G commutes with small products;*

(ix) *for any triangulated category $\mathcal{D}$, any triangulated functor $F : D(\mathcal{A}) \to \mathcal{D}$ admits a right adjoint as soon as F commutes with small direct sum.*

Corollary 1.6.3.2. *Let k be a commutative ring and let $\mathcal{A}$ be a Grothendieck k-abelian category. Then $(K(\mathcal{A})^{\mathrm{op}}, K_{hi}(\mathcal{A}))$ is $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}$-injective and the functor $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}$admits a right derived functor $R\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}} : D(\mathcal{A})^{\mathrm{op}} \times D(\mathcal{A}) \to D(k)$. Moreover, we have*

$$H^n(R\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y)) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y)$$

for $X, Y \in D(\mathcal{A})$.

Proof. The functor $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}$ induces a functor $\mathrm{Hom}^{\bullet}_{\mathcal{A}} : K(\mathcal{A})^{\mathrm{op}} \times K(\mathcal{A}) \to K(k)$ and by ([?], proposition 11.7.3) we have

$$H^n(\mathrm{Hom}^{\bullet}_{\mathcal{A}}(X, Y)) = \mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X, Y[n]).$$

Let $I \in K_{hi}(\mathcal{A})$; if $X \in K(\mathcal{A})$ is quasi-isomorphic to zero, then $\mathrm{Hom}_{K(\mathcal{A})}(X, I) = 0$. Moreover, if $I \in K_{hi}(\mathcal{A})$ is quasi-isomorphic to zero, then I is isomorphic to zero. Therefore $(K(\mathcal{A})^{\mathrm{op}}, K_{hi}(\mathcal{A}))$ is $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}}$-injective and we can apply Proposition 1.5.4.18. The last assertion follows from Theorem 1.5.4.16. □

Remark 1.6.3.3. Let $\mathcal{I}$ be a full subcategory of a Grothendieck category $\mathcal{A}$ and assume that $\mathcal{I}$ is closed by subobjects, quotients and extensions in $\mathcal{A}$, and also by small direct sums. Then by Proposition 1.6.2.4, the triangulated category $D_{\mathcal{I}}(\mathcal{A})$ admits small direct sums and a system of t-generators. Hence $D_{\mathcal{I}}(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A})$ has a right adjoint.

1.6.4 Left derived functors

We now give a criterion for the existence of the left derived functor $LG : D(\mathcal{A}) \to D(\mathcal{A}')$ of an additive functor $G : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}'$ of abelian categories, assuming that G admits a right adjoint. For this, we shall assume throughout this paragraph that $\mathcal{A}$ admits small direct sums and small direct sums are exact in $\mathcal{A}$. Hence, by Proposition 1.6.1.1, $\mathrm{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$, $K(\mathcal{A})$ and $D(\mathcal{A})$ admit small direct sums. Note that Grothendieck categories satisfy these conditions.

1.7 Truncations and recollements

1.7.1 Abelian subcategories

Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category. For $X, Y \in \mathcal{D}$ and $i \in \mathbb{Z}$, we denote by $\mathrm{Hom}^i(X,Y) := \mathrm{Hom}(X, Y[i])$ the morphisms from X to Y of **degree** i.

Proposition 1.7.1.1. *Let (X,Y,Z) and (X',Y',Z') be distinguished triangles, and $\beta : Y \to Y'$ be a morphism such that we have a solid commutative diagram*

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, dashed, "\alpha"] \arrow[dr, phantom, "(A)"] & Y \arrow[r, "g"] \arrow[d, "\beta"] \arrow[dr, phantom, "(B)"] & Z \arrow[r, "h"] \arrow[d, dashed, "\gamma"] & X[1] \\ X \arrow[r, "f'"] & Y \arrow[r, "g'"] & Z \arrow[r, "h'"] & X'[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

Then the following conditions are equivalent:

(i) $g'\beta f = 0$;

(ii) *there eixsts a morphism $\alpha : X \to X'$ rendering the commutative square (A);*

(iii) *there eixsts a morphism $\gamma : Z \to Z'$ rendering the commutative square (B);*

(iv) *there exists a morphism of triangles (α, β, γ).*

If these conditions are verified and $\mathrm{Hom}^{-1}(X, Z') = 0$*, then the morphisms α, β are unique.*

Proof. The exactness of the sequence

$$\mathrm{Hom}^{-1}(X,Z') \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(X,X') \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(X,Y') \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(X,Z')$$

applied to $\beta f \in \mathrm{Hom}(X,Y')$, proves the equivalence of (i) and (ii), with the uniqueness of α if $\mathrm{Hom}^{-1}(X,Z) = 0$. The implication (ii)⇒(iv) follows from (TR2): if α satisfies (ii), then there exists $\gamma : Z \to Z'$ such that (α, β, γ) is a morphism of triangles; the converse of this is trivial. Finally, a dual argument shows that (i)⇔(iii), and the uniqueness of γ if $\mathrm{Hom}^{-1}(X, Z') = 0$. □

Corollary 1.7.1.2. *Let $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \xrightarrow{h} X[1]$ be a distinguished triangle. If* $\mathrm{Hom}^{-1}(X,Z) = 0$*, then*

(a) *the cone of f is unique up to unique isomorphisms;*

(b) *the morphism $h : Z \to X[1]$ is the unique morphism such that the triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \to X[1]$ is distinguished.*

Proof. If in Proposition 1.7.1.1, we set $X = X'$, $Y = Y'$ and let f, g be the identity, then Z is isomorphic to Z' and $\mathrm{Hom}^{-1}(X,Z') = 0$, so (a) follows from the uniqueness of γ. For (b), we can apply triangle cat morphism extension to triangle iff to the diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} X \arrow[r, "f"] \arrow[d, equal] & Y \arrow[r, "g"] \arrow[d, equal] & Z \arrow[r, "h"] & X[1] \\ X \arrow[r, "f"] & Y \arrow[r, "g"] & Z \arrow[r, "h'"] & X[1] \end{tikzcd}$$

We necessarily have $\gamma = \mathrm{id}_Z$, whence $h = h'$. □

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a (fixed) full subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$ such that $0 \in \mathcal{C}$. We say that $\mathcal{C}$ is **right leaning** if $\mathrm{Hom}^i_{\mathcal{D}}(X,Y) := \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(X, Y[i])$ is null for any $i < 0$ and $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$. For such a category $\mathcal{C}$, by Corollary 1.7.1.2, we see that a morphism (α, β, γ) of distinguished triangles in $\mathcal{C}$ is uniquely determined by the morphism β.

Example 1.7.1.3. Let $\mathcal{D}$ be the derived category of an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{A}$, identified with a full subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$. It is clear that for $X, Y \in \mathcal{A}$ we have $\mathrm{Hom}(X, Y[i]) = 0$ unless $i = 0$, so $\mathcal{A}$ is right leaning in $\mathcal{D}$.

Proposition 1.7.1.4. *Let $f : X \to Y$ be a morphism in $\mathcal{C}$. Complete f into a distinguished triangle $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \to S$ and suppose that there is a distinguished triangle $N[1] \to S \to C$ with $N, C \in \mathcal{C}$, so that we have a commutative diagram*

$$\begin{tikzcd}
N[1] \arrow[dd, "\alpha"'] \arrow[dr] & & C \arrow[ll, "+1"'] \\
& S \arrow[ur] \arrow[dl, "+1"] & \\
X \arrow[rr, "f"'] & & Y \arrow[uu, "\beta"'] \arrow[ul]
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.7.1.1}$$

Then $\alpha[-1] : N \to X$ is a kernel of f in $\mathcal{C}$ and $\beta : Y \to C$ is a cokernel of f in $\mathcal{C}$.

Proof. For $Z \in \mathcal{C}$, the long exact sequence of Hom gives the following exact sequences

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}^{-1}(Z, S) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(Z, X) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(Z, Y)$$

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(Z, N) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}^{-1}(Z, S) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}^{-1}(Z, C) = 0$$

which proves that $(N, \alpha[-1])$ is a kernel of f (recall the hypothesis on $\mathcal{C}$). A dual argument proves that (C, β) is a cokernel of f. $\square$

Example 1.7.1.5. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category and $\mathcal{D} = D(\mathcal{A})$. Then the cone S of $f : X \to Y$ is the complex $X \xrightarrow{f} Y$, with X at degree -1 and Y at degree 0. It has a subcomplex $(\ker f)[1] = H^{-1}(S)[1]$ and the quotient $X/\ker f \to Y$ is quasi-isomorphic to the complex $\operatorname{coker} f = H^0(S)$, placed at degree 0; we thus obtain the diagram (1.7.1.1).

Example 1.7.1.6. In the situation of Proposition 1.7.1.4, if f is a monomorphism, then we have $N = 0$, so $S \cong C$ and (1.7.1.1) is reduced to the distinguished triangle (X, Y, C). On the other hand, if f is an epimorphic, then $C = 0$, so $N[1] \cong S$ and (1.7.1.1) is reduced to the distinguished triangle (N, X, Y).

A morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{C}$ is called **$\mathcal{C}$-admissible**, or simply **admissible** (if there is no ambiguity on $\mathcal{C}$), if it is the base of a diagram (1.7.1.1). For any distinguished triangle

$$X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z \longrightarrow X[1]$$

with X, Y, Z in $\mathcal{C}$ and f, g admissible, we see that f is a kernel of g and g is a cokernel of f. By Corollary 1.7.1.2, the morphism $Z \to X[1]$ is uniquely determined by f and g.

A sequence $X \to Y \to Z$ in $\mathcal{C}$ is called an **admissible short exact sequence** if it is deduced from a distinguished triangle by removing the arrow of degree 1. In other words, $X \to Y \to Z$ is admissible if it can be extended into a distinguished triangle in $\mathcal{D}$.

Proposition 1.7.1.7. *Suppose that $\mathcal{C}$ is stable under finite direct sums. Then the following conditions are equivalent:*

(i) *$\mathcal{C}$ is an abelian category and every short exact sequence is admissible.*

(ii) *Any morphism of $\mathcal{C}$ is $\mathcal{C}$-admissible.*

Proof. We first assume that any morphism in $\mathcal{C}$ is admissible. By Proposition 1.7.1.4, any morphism of $\mathcal{C}$ has a kernel and cokernel, so to prove that $\mathcal{C}$ is abelian, it suffices to verify that $\operatorname{coim} f \cong \operatorname{im} f$ for any morphism $f : X \to Y$ in $\mathcal{C}$. Regarding (1.7.1.1) as the cap of an octahedron and apply (TR4), we obtain an octahedron

$$\begin{tikzcd}
C \arrow[dd, "+1"'] & & Y \arrow[ll, "\beta"'] \arrow[dl] \\
& S \arrow[ul] \arrow[dr, "+1"] & \\
N[1] \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr, "\alpha[1]"'] & & X \arrow[uu, "f"']
\end{tikzcd}
\qquad
\begin{tikzcd}
C \arrow[dd, "+1"'] \arrow[dr] & & Y \arrow[ll, "\beta"'] \\
& I \arrow[ur] \arrow[dl, "+1"] & \\
N[1] \arrow[rr, "\alpha[1]"'] & & X \arrow[uu, "f"'] \arrow[ul]
\end{tikzcd}$$

By Proposition 1.7.1.4, we see that β is an (admissible) epimorphism (as the cokernel of f). Since the triangle (I, Y, C) is distinguished, we conclude from Example 1.7.1.6 that $I \in \mathcal{C}$ and it is the the kernel of β, i.e. the image of f. Dually, the distinguished triangle (N, X, I), obtained by rotating, shows that I is the coimage of f. Finally, by Example 1.7.1.6, we see that any short exact sequence is admissible.

Conversely, assume the codition (i). The kernel N, cokernel C and image I of $f : X \to Y$ then give short exact sequences

$$0 \longrightarrow N \longrightarrow X \longrightarrow I \longrightarrow 0 \qquad 0 \longrightarrow I \longrightarrow Y \longrightarrow C \longrightarrow 0$$

By hypothesis, these two sequences are admissible, and the two thus obtained triangles form the upper cap of an octahedron. We can then apply (TR4) to obtain an octahedron of the above form, so f is admissible. □

A full subcategory $\mathcal{C}$ of $\mathcal{D}$ is called **admissibly abelian** if it is right leaning and satisfies the equivalent conditions of Proposition 1.7.1.7. By Example 1.7.1.5, we see that if $\mathcal{D}$ is the derived category of an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$, then $\mathcal{A}$ is admissibly abelian in $\mathcal{D}$.

1.7.2 t-structures

Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category. A ***t*-structure** on $\mathcal{D}$ is a pair of strictly full subcategories $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ satisfying the following conditions: If we put $\mathcal{D}^{\leq n} = T^{-n}(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0})$ and $\mathcal{D}^{\geq n} = T^{-n}(\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$, then

(t1) $\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0} \subseteq \mathcal{D}^{\leq 1}$ and $\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0} \supseteq \mathcal{D}^{\geq 1}$;

(t2) $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(X, Y) = 0$ for $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$ and $Y \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 1}$;

(t3) for any $X \in \mathcal{D}$, there exists a distinguished triangle (A, X, B) with $A \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$ and $B \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 1}$.

The **core** (or **heart**) of the t-structure $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is defined to be the full subcategory $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$.

Example 1.7.2.1 (Examples of t-structures).

(a) Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category and $\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}(A)$. The natural t-structure on $\mathcal{D}(A)$ is then defined so that $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq n}$ (resp. $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq n}$) if and only if $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i > n$ (resp. for $i < n$). To verify (t3), we note that for any complex X, the truncations $\tau^{\leq 0}X$ and $\tau^{\geq 1}X$ are in $\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$ and $\mathcal{D}^{\geq 1}$, respectively, and we have a distinguished triangle $(\tau^{\leq 0}X, X, \tau^{\geq 1}X)$.

(b) If $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is a t-structure on $\mathcal{D}$, then for any integer n, $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is also a t-structure. We say that this t-structure is induced from the previous one by *translation*.

(c) If $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is a t-structure on $\mathcal{D}$, then $((\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0})^{\mathrm{op}}, (\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})^{\mathrm{op}})$ is a t-structure on $\mathcal{D}^{\mathrm{op}}$, called the dual t-structure.

A triangulated category $\mathcal{D}$, endowed with a t-structure $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$, is called a ***t*-category**.

Proposition 1.7.2.2. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a t-category. Then for integers $m < n$, we have* $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(X, Y) = 0$ *if $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq m}$ and $Y \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq n}$.*

Proof. □

Proposition 1.7.2.3. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a t-category.*

(a) *The inclusion functor $\mathcal{D}^{\leq n} \to \mathcal{D}$ admits a right adjoint $\tau^{\leq n}$, and $\mathcal{D}^{\geq n} \to \mathcal{D}$ admits a left adjoint $\tau^{\geq n}$.*

(b) *For any $X \in \mathcal{D}$, there eixsts a unique morphism in* $\mathrm{Hom}^1(\tau^{\ge 1}X, \tau^{\le 0}X)$ *such that the triangle*

$$\tau^{\le 0}X \longrightarrow X \longrightarrow \tau^{\ge 1}X \xrightarrow{+1}$$

is distinguished. Moreover, up to isomorphisms, this is the unique distinguished (A, X, B) such that $A \in \mathcal{D}^{\le 0}$ and $B \in \mathcal{D}^{\ge 1}$.

Proof. By duality and translation, it suffices to prove (a) for $\mathcal{D}^{\le 0}$. For each $X \in \mathcal{D}$, we need to find $A \in \mathcal{D}^{\le 0}$ with a morphism $A \to X$ (the value of $\tau^{\le 0}$ at X), such that for any $T \in \mathcal{D}^{\le 0}$ we have an isomorphism $\mathrm{Hom}(T, A) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(T, X)$. Let (A, X, B) be a triangle as in (t3). The long exact sequence of Hom, together with (t1), (t2), shows that $\mathrm{Hom}(T, A) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(T, X)$, so we set $A = \tau^{\le 0}X$. A similar argument shows that $B = \tau^{\ge 1}X$, so there is a distinguished triangle $(\tau^{\le 0}X, X, \tau^{\ge 1}X)$ and any distinguished triangle in (t3) is isomorphic to this triangle. The uniqueness of these isomorphisms follows from (t2) and Proposition 1.7.1.1. □

The distinguished triangle $(\tau^{\le 0}X, X, \tau^{\ge 1}X)$ shows that the following conditions are equivalent:

(i) $\tau^{\le 0}X = 0$;

(ii) $\mathrm{Hom}(T, X) = 0$ for $T \in \mathcal{D}^{\le 0}$;

(iii) $X \cong \tau^{\ge 1}X$.

The equivalence (ii)⇔(iii) means that $\mathcal{D}^{\ge 1}$ is the right orthogonal of $\mathcal{D}^{\le 0}$, which shows that $\mathcal{D}^{\ge 1}$ is stable under exensions[1]. Dually, we see that $\tau^{\ge 1}X = 0$ if and only if $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\le 0}$, and $\mathcal{D}^{\le 0}$ is the left orthogonal of $\mathcal{D}^{\ge 1}$, which is stable under extensions. In particular, $\mathcal{D}^{\le 0}$ and $\mathcal{D}^{\ge 1}$ are stable under finite direct sums.

For $a \le b$, we have $\mathcal{D}^{\le a} \subseteq \mathcal{D}^{\le b}$, so there exists a unique morphism $\tau^{\le a}X \to \tau^{\le b}X$ so that we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\tau^{\le a} \arrow[rr] \arrow[dr] & & \tau^{\le b}X \arrow[dl] \\
& X &
\end{tikzcd}$$

which identifies $\tau^{\le a}X$ with $\tau^{\le a}\tau^{\le b}X$. Dually, we have $\tau^{\ge a}X \to \tau^{\ge b}X$, which identifies $\tau^{\ge b}X$ with $\tau^{\ge b}\tau^{\ge a}X$.

For any integer a, we write $\tau^{>a}$ for $\tau^{\ge a+1}$ and $\tau^{<a}$ for $\tau^{<a-1}$. We deduce by translation that $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\le a}$ if and only if $\tau^{>a}X = 0$. If $b > a$, then we have $\tau^{\ge b}X = 0$ in this case, and for $b \le a$ we have $\tau^{>a}\tau^{\ge b}X = \tau^{>a}X = 0$, and hence $\tau^{\ge b}$ sends $\mathcal{D}^{\le a}$ into itself.

Proposition 1.7.2.4. *Let $a \le b$ be integers. For $X \in \mathcal{D}$, there exists a unique isomorphism $\tau^{\ge a}\tau^{\le b}X \to \tau^{\le b}\tau^{\ge a}X$ rendering the following commutative diagram*

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\tau^{\le b}X \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & X \arrow[r] & \tau^{\ge a}X \\
\tau^{\ge a}\tau^{\le b}X \arrow[rr] & & \tau^{\le b}\tau^{\ge a}X \arrow[u]
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.7.2.1}$$

Proof. Since $\tau^{\ge a}X \in \mathcal{D}^{\ge a}$, we see that the canonical morphism $\tau^{\le b}X \to \tau^{\ge a}X$ is obtained by the composition $\tau^{\le b}X \to \tau^{\ge a}\tau^{\le b}X \to \tau^{\ge a}X$. Also, since $\tau^{\ge a}\tau^{\le b}X \in \mathcal{D}^{\le b}$, the morphism $\tau^{\le b}X \to \tau^{\ge a}X$ factors through $\tau^{\le b}\tau^{\ge a}X$, so we obtain the diagram (1.7.2.1). Applying (TR4) to $\tau^{<a}X \to \tau^{\le b}X \to X$, we obtain an octahedron

$$\begin{tikzcd}
& & & {} & & \\
& & Y \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & & {} & \\
& \tau^{\le b}X \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & & \tau^{\ge a}X \arrow[ur] \arrow[ddr] & & \\
& & X \arrow[ur] \arrow[drr] & & & \\
\tau^{<a}X \arrow[uur] \arrow[urr] & & & & \tau^{>b}X \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & {} \\
& & & & {} &
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.7.2.2}$$

[1]We recall that an object Y is called an extensin of Z by X if there is a distinguished triangle (X, Y, Z) in $\mathcal{D}$, and a subcategory $\mathcal{D}'$ of $\mathcal{D}$ is stable under extensions if for any distinguished triangle (X, Y, Z) with $X, Z \in \mathcal{D}'$, we have $Y \in \mathcal{D}'$.

In this octahedron, Y is both isomorphic to $\tau^{\geq a}\tau^{\leq b}X$ (because of the distinguished triangle $(\tau^{<a}X, \tau^{\leq b}X, Y)$, in which $\tau^{<a}X = \tau^{<a}\tau^{\leq b}X$) and to $\tau^{\geq b}\tau^{\leq a}X$ (because of the distinguished triangle $(Y, \tau^{\geq a}X, \tau^{>b}X)$). ☐

Corollary 1.7.2.5. *Let $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $m < n$. Then we have $\tau^{\leq m}\tau^{\geq n} = \tau^{\geq n}\tau^{\leq m} = 0$.*

Proof. This follows from Proposition 1.7.2.2. ☐

Because of Proposition 1.7.2.4, we write $\tau^{[a,b]}X := \tau^{\geq a}\tau^{\leq b}X \cong \tau^{\leq b}\tau^{\geq a}X$. It is clear that we thus obtain a functor $\tau^{[a,b]} : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}^{[a,b]} := \mathcal{D}^{\leq b} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq a}$.

Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category and $\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}(A)$ be the derived category of $\mathcal{A}$. Then the natural t-structure $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ has the property that $\mathcal{A} \cong \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$. We now prove that this is true for any t-structure of a triangulated category $\mathcal{D}$. That is, the heart $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$ is an abelian category.

Theorem 1.7.2.6. *The heart $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$ of a t-category $\mathcal{D}$ is an admissible abelian category of $\mathcal{D}$, which is stable under extensions. Moreover, the functor $H^0 := \tau^{\geq 0}\tau^{\leq 0} : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{C}$ is a cohomological functor.*

Proof. Let $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$ and $f : X \to Y$ be a morphism with cone S. The distinguished triangle $(Y, S, X[1])$ then shows that S is in $\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq -1}$. The truncations $\tau^{\geq 0}S$ and $\tau^{\leq -1}S$ are hence in $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{C}[1]$, respectively, and the distinguished triangle $(\tau^{\leq -1}S, S, \tau^{\geq 0}S)$ fits into a diagram (1.7.1.4). This proves that $\mathcal{C}$ is admissibly abelian, and it is stable under extensions as we have remarked.

It remains to prove that for any distinguished triangle (X, Y, Z), the sequence $H^0(X) \to H^0(Y) \to H^0(Z)$ is exact. To this end, we first assume that X, Y and Z are in $\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$. For $U \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$ and $V \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$, we note that $H^0(U) = \tau^{\geq 0}U$ and $H^0(V) = \tau^{\leq 0}V$, so there are isomorphisms

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(H^0(U), H^0(V)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(U, H^0(V)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(U, V).$$

For $T \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$, the long exact sequence of Hom and (t2) then give an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(Z, T) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(Y, T) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Hom}(X, T)$$

so the sequence $0 \to \mathrm{Hom}(H^0(Z), T) \to \mathrm{Hom}(H^0(Y), T) \to \mathrm{Hom}(H^0(X), T)$ is exact. Since this is true for any T, we conclude that $H^0(X) \to H^0(Y) \to H^0(Z) \to 0$ is exact.

We now show that the above conclusion is still valid if we only assume that $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$. For this, we note that for $T \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 1}$, the long exact sequence of Hom gives an isomorphism $\mathrm{Hom}(Z, T) \cong \mathrm{Hom}(Y, T)$, so we have $\tau^{\geq 1}Y \cong \tau^{\geq 1}Z$. Apply (TR4) to $Y \to Z \to \tau^{\geq 1}Z$,

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & & & {} & \\
 & & \tau^{\leq 0}Z \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & & {} \\
 & \tau^{\leq 0}Y \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & & Z \arrow[ur] \arrow[d] & \\
 & & Y \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & \tau^{\geq 1}Z \arrow[r] \arrow[dr] & {} \\
X \arrow[uur] \arrow[urr] & & & & {}
\end{tikzcd}$$

we then obtain a distinguished triangle $(X, \tau^{\leq 0}Y, \tau^{\leq 0}Z)$, on which we can apply the preceding arguments to conclude that $H^0(X) \to H^0(\tau^{\leq 0}Y) \to H^0(\tau^{\leq 0}Z) \to 0$ is exact. This proves our claim since $H^0\tau^{\leq 0} \cong H^0$. Dually, we conclude that if $Z \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$, then the sequence $0 \to H^0(X) \to H^0(Y) \to H^0(Z)$ is exact.

Finally, we deal with the general case. By (TR4) we have an octahedron

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & & & {} & \\
 & & \tau^{\geq 1}X \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & & {} \\
 & X \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & & U \arrow[ur] \arrow[d] & \\
 & & Y \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & Z \arrow[r] \arrow[dr] & {} \\
\tau^{\leq 0}X \arrow[uur] \arrow[urr] & & & & {}
\end{tikzcd}$$

From the distinguished triangle $(\tau^{\leq 0}X, Y, U)$, we see that the sequence $H^0(X) \to H^0(Y) \to H^0(U) \to 0$ is exact, and $(U, Z, \tau^{\geq 1}X[1])$ shows that $0 \to H^0(U) \to H^0(Z)$ is exact. We then conclude the exactness of $H^0(X) \to H^0(Y) \to H^0(Z)$, which completes the proof. □

Proposition 1.7.2.7. *Let X be an object of $\mathcal{D}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.*

(a) *$H^p(i) : H^p(\tau^{\leq n}X) \to H^p(X)$ is an isomorphism for $p \leq n$ and $H^p(\tau^{\leq n}X) = 0$ for $p > 0$.*

(b) *$H^p(j) : H^p(X) \to H^p(\tau^{\geq n}X)$ is an isomorphism for $p \geq n$ and $H^p(\tau^{\geq n}X) = 0$ for $p < n$.*

Proof. By duality, it suffices to prove (a). If $p > n$, then by Corollary 1.7.2.5 we have

$$H^p(\tau^{\leq n}X) = \tau^{\leq p}\tau^{\geq p}\tau^{\leq n}X[p] = 0.$$

On the other hand, if $p \leq n$, then $\tau^{\leq p}\tau^{\leq n}X \to \tau^{\leq p}X$ is an isomorphism, and therefore

$$H^p(\tau^{\leq n}X) = \tau^{\geq p}\tau^{\leq p}\tau^{\leq n}X[p] \to \tau^{\geq p}\tau^{\leq p}X[p] = H^p(X)[p]$$

is an isomorphism. □

Corollary 1.7.2.8. *Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and X be an object in $\mathcal{D}^{\leq n}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}^{\geq n}$). Then $H^p(X) = 0$ for $p > n$ (resp. $p < n$).*

Proof. If X is an object in $\mathcal{D}^{\leq n}$, then $\tau^{\leq n}X \to X$ is an isomorphism, so $H^p(\tau^{\leq n}X) \to H^p(X)$ is an isomorphism for all $p \in \mathbb{Z}$. On the other hand, by Proposition 1.7.2.7, $H^p(\tau^{\leq n}X) = 0$ for $p > n$. The other part of the corollary follows by duality. □

We say the t-structure of $\mathcal{D}$ is **non-degenerate** if the intersection of the $\mathcal{D}^{\leq n}$, and that of the $\mathcal{D}^{\geq n}$, both reduce to the zero object. For each integer $i \in \mathbb{Z}$, we put $H^i(X) := H^0(X[i])$.

Proposition 1.7.2.9. *If the t-structure of $\mathcal{D}$ is non-degenerate, then the system of functors H^i is conservative, and for an object $X \in \mathcal{D}$ to belong to $\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$), it is necessary and sufficient that $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i > 0$ (resp. $i < 0$).*

Proof. Let $X \in \mathcal{D}$. We first prove that $H^i(X) = 0$ for all $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ if and only if $X = 0$. If $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$, the hypothesis $H^0(X) = 0$ shows that $\tau^{\geq 0}X = 0$, whence $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 1}$. Inductively, we conclude that $X \in \bigcap_n \mathcal{D}^{\leq n}$, whence is zero by the hypothesis. Dually, we also conclude that if $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$, then $X = 0$ if and only if $H^i(X) = 0$ for any $i \in \mathbb{Z}$. For the general case, the values of $\tau^{\leq 0}X$ and $\tau^{\geq 1}X$ under H^i are all zero, hence they are zero. We then conclude the claim by the distinguished triangle $(\tau^{\leq 0}X, X, \tau^{\geq 1}X)$.

If a morphism $f : X \to Y$, with cone Z, induces isomorphisms $H^i(X) \cong H^i(Y)$ for each i, then the long exact sequence of H^i shows that $H^i(Z) = 0$ for all i, so $Z = 0$ and f is an isomorphism. Finally, if $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i > 0$, then $H^i(\tau^{>0}X) = 0$ for any $i \in \mathbb{Z}$, so $\tau^{>0}X = 0$ and we conclude that $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$. The dual argument shows that $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$ if $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i < 0$. □

Proposition 1.7.2.10. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a t-category. Then the following conditins are equivalent:*

(i) *the union of the $\mathcal{D}^{\leq n}$ and that of the $\mathcal{D}^{\geq n}$ both equal to $\mathcal{D}$;*

(ii) *the t-structure is non-degenerate and for any $X \in \mathcal{D}$, $H^p(X)$ are nonzero for finitely many $p \in \mathbb{Z}$.*

*The t-structure $\mathcal{D}$ is called **bounded** if it satisfies the above conditions.*

Proof. Assume the conditions of (i) and let X be an object of $\mathcal{D}$ such that $H^p(X) = 0$ for all $p \in \mathbb{Z}$. By assumption, there exists $n, m \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq n} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq m}$. By considering the distinguished triangle $(\tau^{\leq p-1}X, X, \tau^{\geq p}X)$ for any $p \in \mathbb{Z}$, we conclude that $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq n} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq n}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. In particular, $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq -1} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$, which means $\mathrm{Hom}(X, X) = 0$ and therefore $X = 0$. This shows that the t-structure on $\mathcal{D}$ is non-degenerate. Let X be an arbitrary object in $\mathcal{D}$. Then $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq n} \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq m}$ for some $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$. By Proposition 1.7.2.7, $H^p(X) = 0$ for $p > n$ and $p < m$, so $H^p(X) \neq 0$ for finitely many $p \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Conversely, let X be an object in $\mathcal{D}$. Then there exists $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such thar $H^p(X) = 0$ for $|p| > n$. By , this implies that $H^p(\tau^{\leq -n}X) = 0$ and $H^p(\tau^{\geq n}X) = 0$ for all $p \in \mathbb{Z}$. Since the t-structure is non-degenerate, $\tau^{\leq -n}X = \tau^{\geq n}X = 0$, so $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq -n+1}$ and $\mathcal{D}^{\leq n-1}$. □

Example 1.7.2.11. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an abelian category. Then the standard t-structure on the bounded derived category Db(A) is bounded. The standard t-structures on $D^+(\mathcal{A})$, $D^-(\mathcal{A})$ and $D(\mathcal{A})$ are not bounded.

Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category with a nondegenerate t-structure. Let Db be the full subcategory consisting of all X in $\mathcal{D}$ such that $H^p(X) \neq 0$ for finitely many $p \in \mathbb{Z}$. Clearly, $\mathcal{D}^b$ is strictly full subcategory. Assume that (X, Y, Z) is a distinguished triangle in $\mathcal{D}$ and that two of its vertices are in $\mathcal{D}^b$. Then, from the long exact sequence of cohomology we see that the third vertex is also in $\mathcal{D}^b$. Therefore, $\mathcal{D}^b$ is a triangulated subcategory. Let X be an object in $\mathcal{D}^b$. Then, by Proposition 1.7.2.7, $\tau^{\leq n}X$ and $\tau^{\geq n}X$ are also in Db for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. This implies that $(\mathcal{D}^b \cap \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^b \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is a t-structure on $\mathcal{D}^b$. Clearly, the truncation functors and the cohomology functor H^0 for this t-structure are the restrictions of the corresponding functors on $\mathcal{D}$. Also, from the above result we see that this t-structure on $\mathcal{D}^b$ is bounded. We call $\mathcal{D}^b$ the subcategory of **cohomologically bounded objects** in $\mathcal{D}$.

Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category and denote by $\mathrm{Iso}(\mathcal{D})$ the collection of sets of isomorphism classes of objects of $\mathcal{D}$ (for $X \in \mathcal{D}$, we denote by $[X]$ its isomorphism class). We define an operation $*$ on $\mathrm{Iso}(\mathcal{D})$ as follows: for $A, B \in \mathrm{Iso}(\mathcal{D})$, $A * B$ is defined to be

$$A * B = \{[X] : \text{there exists a distinguished triangle } (U, X, V) \text{ with } [U] \in A \text{ and } [V] \in B\}.$$

Lemma 1.7.2.12. *The operation $*$ is associative.*

Proof. It suffices to prove that for $X, Y, Z \in \mathcal{D}$, we have

$$(\{[X]\} * \{[Y]\}) * \{[Z]\} = \{[X]\} * (\{[Y]\} * \{[Z]\}).$$

For that $[T]$ belongs to the left side (resp. right side), it is necessary and sufficient that T fits into a diagram of the upper cap (resp. lower cap)

$$\begin{tikzcd}
Z \arrow[dd] \arrow[dr, "+1"] & & T \arrow[ll] \\
& U \arrow[ur] \arrow[dl] & \\
Y \arrow[rr, "+1"'] & & X \arrow[uu] \arrow[ul]
\end{tikzcd}
\qquad \text{resp.} \qquad
\begin{tikzcd}
Z \arrow[dd, "+1"'] & & T \arrow[ll] \arrow[dl] \\
& V \arrow[ul] \arrow[dr, "+1"] & \\
Y \arrow[ur] \arrow[rr] & & X \arrow[uu]
\end{tikzcd}$$

The lemma then follows from axiom (TR4) and the inverse of (TR4′). □

Lemma 1.7.2.12 permits us to define the $*$-product $A_1 * \cdots * A_p$ for a sequence of elements in $\mathrm{Iso}(\mathcal{D})$, without using the parentheses. It will be convenient for us to define the $*$-product of the empty sequence as being $\{[0]\}$.

Example 1.7.2.13. Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a strictly full subcategory of $\mathcal{A}$ and $E\mathcal{A}$ be the smallest strictly full subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$ containing $\mathcal{A}$, the zero object, and is stable under extensions. We have

$$[E\mathcal{A}] = \bigcup_{n \geq 0} \underbrace{[\mathcal{A}] * \cdots * [\mathcal{A}]}_{n\text{-factors}}. \tag{1.7.2.3}$$

We also note that the condition that any morphisms in $\mathcal{A}$ are $\mathcal{A}$-admissible can be reformulated as

$$[\mathcal{A}] * [\mathcal{A}[1]] \subseteq [\mathcal{A}[1]] * [\mathcal{A}]. \tag{1.7.2.4}$$

We now consider an admissible abelian subcategory $\mathcal{C}$ of $\mathcal{D}$ which is stable under extensions. Let $\mathcal{D}^b$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}^{b,\leq 0}$, resp. $\mathcal{D}^{b,\geq 0}$, resp. $\mathcal{D}^{b,I}$, where I is an integer of $\mathbb{Z}$) be the smallest strictly full subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$ containing the $\mathcal{C}[n]$ for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ (resp. $-n \leq 0$, resp. $-n \geq 0$, resp. $-n \in I$) which is stable under extensions[2].

Proposition 1.7.2.14. *The pari $(\mathcal{D}^{b,\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{b,\geq 0})$ is a bounded t-structure on $\mathcal{D}^b$. For $m \leq n$, we have $\mathcal{D}^{b,[m,n]} = \mathcal{D}^{b,\geq m} \cap \mathcal{D}^{b,\leq n}$. In particular, $\mathcal{C} = \mathcal{D}^{b,\leq 0} \cap \mathcal{D}^{b,\geq 0}$.*

Proof. The axiom (t1) is trivially satisfied, and (t2) follows from the long exact sequence of Hom and $\mathrm{Hom}^i(X, Y) = 0$ for $i < 0$ and $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$. Since $\mathcal{C}$ is stable under extension, for any interver $I = [m, n]$ of $\mathbb{Z}$ $(m \leq n)$, we have

$$[\mathcal{D}^{b,I}] = [\mathcal{C}[-m]] * \cdots * [\mathcal{C}[-n]]. \tag{1.7.2.5}$$

[2]If I is the empty interval, it is more natural to define $\mathcal{D}^{b,I}$ to be the category of zero objects.

In view of this, for intervals J, K such that $I = J \cup K$, we then have

$$[\mathcal{D}^{b,I}] = [\mathcal{D}^{b,J}] * [\mathcal{D}^{b,K}]. \tag{1.7.2.6}$$

In particular, for $J = [m, 0]$ and $K = [1, n]$, we then conclude that any object of $\mathcal{D}^{b,I}$ is the extension of an object of $\mathcal{D}^{b,K} \subseteq \mathcal{D}^{b,\geq 1}$ by an object of $\mathcal{D}^{b,J} \subseteq \mathcal{D}^{b,\leq 0}$. Since $\mathcal{D}^b$ is the union of $\mathcal{D}^{b,I}$, we conclude axiom (t3).

By (1.7.2.5), if X is in $\mathcal{D}^{b,I}$, there exists a sequence of distinguished triangles (X_i, X_{i+1}, A_{i+1}) ($m \leq i \leq n$) with $X_m \in \mathcal{C}[-m]$, $A_i \in \mathcal{C}[-j]$, and $X_n = X$. We may also set $X_{m-1} = 0$ and $A_m = X_m$ and obtain a distinguished triangle $(X_{m-1}, X_m, A_m) = (0, X_m, X_m)$. Apply the long exact sequence of cohomology to these triangles, we see by recurrence over j that, for any $m \leq i \leq n$, we have

$$H^i(X_j) = \begin{cases} 0 & i \notin [m, j], \\ A_i[i] & i \in [m, j]. \end{cases}$$

In particular, $[X] \in \{[H^m(X)[-m]]\} * \cdots * \{[H^n(X)[-n]]\}$; this proves the boundedness of the t-structure (if $H^i(X) = 0$ for all i, then $X = 0$) and the second statement of the proposition (if $X \in \mathcal{C}^{b,\geq m} \cap \mathcal{D}^{b,\leq n}$, the $H^i(X) = 0$ for $i \notin [m, n]$ and therefore X is in $\mathcal{D}^{b,[m,n]}$). □

Remark 1.7.2.15. Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a triangulated category and $\mathcal{C}$ be a right leaning full subcategory such that any morphism in $\mathcal{C}$ is admissible. The proof of Proposition 1.7.1.7 shows that any morphism of $\mathcal{C}$ has a kernel and a cokernel, that $\operatorname{im} f = \operatorname{coim} f$ and that any short exact sequence of $\mathcal{C}$ is admissible. For $\mathcal{C}$ to be abelian, it is necessary and sufficient that $\mathcal{C}$ admits finite direct sums.

Let $\mathcal{C}'$ be the category $E\mathcal{C}$ of successive extensions of objects of $\mathcal{C}$. The long exact sequence of Hom shows that $\mathcal{C}'$ is right leaning. Moreover, we deduce from (1.7.2.3), (1.7.2.4) and the associativity of $*$ that $[\mathcal{C}'] * [\mathcal{C}'[1]] \subseteq [\mathcal{C}'[1]] * [\mathcal{C}']$, i.e. that every morphism of $\mathcal{C}$ is admissible. Therefore $\mathcal{C}$ is an admissible abelian subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$. Applying Proposition 1.7.2.14 to $\mathcal{C}'$, we conclude that, for $\mathcal{D}^b$, $\mathcal{D}^{b,\leq 0}$ and $\mathcal{D}^{b,\leq 0}$ defined as above, $(\mathcal{D}^{b,\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{b,\geq 0})$ is a t-structure of $\mathcal{D}^b$ with heart $\mathcal{C}'$.

1.7.2.1 t-exact functors

Proposition 1.7.2.16. *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be a t-category, $K \in \mathcal{D}$, and consider an short exact sequence in $\mathcal{C}$:*

$$0 \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow H^0(K) \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow 0$$

(a) *There exists $K' \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$, with a morphism $i : K' \to K$, such that, over $\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$, K' represents the functor*

$$L \mapsto \ker(\operatorname{Hom}(L, K) \to \operatorname{Hom}(H^0(L), B)).$$

Moreover, for a couple (K', i) to represents this functor, it is necessary and sufficient that for $K' \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$, $\tau^{<0}K' \cong \tau^{<0}K$ and $H^0(K') \cong A$.

(b) *Dually, we obtain a morphhism $j : K \to K''$ with $K'' \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$ and the couple (K'', j) represents the functor*

$$L \mapsto \operatorname{coker}(\operatorname{Hom}(L, K) \to \operatorname{Hom}(H^0(L), B)).$$

Moreover, the couple (K'', j) is characterized by $K'' \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$, $\tau^{>0}K \cong \tau^{>0}K''$ and $H^0(K'') = B$.

(c) *There exists a unique morphism $d : K'' \to K'$ such that the triangle (K', K, K'') is distinguished.*

Proof. □

Let $\mathcal{D}_i$ ($i = 1, 2$) be t-categories, $\mathcal{C}_i$ be the heart of $\mathcal{D}_i$, and denote by $\varepsilon : \mathcal{C}_i \to \mathcal{D}_i$ the inclusion functor. Let $T : \mathcal{D}_1 \to \mathcal{D}_2$ be an exact functor of triangulated categories (in the usual sense for triangulated categories, that is, up to a natural equivalence it commutes with translation and preserves distinguished triangles); we say that T is **right t-exact** if $T(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}) \subseteq D^{\leq 0}$, **left t-exact** if $T(\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}) \subseteq D^{\geq 0}$, and t-exact if it is both left t-exact and right t-exact.

Proposition 1.7.2.17. *Let $T : \mathcal{D}_1 \to \mathcal{D}_2$ be an exact functor.*

(a) *If T is left (resp. right) t-exact, the functor ${}^pT := H^0 \circ T \circ \varepsilon : \mathcal{C}_1 \to \mathcal{C}_2$ is left (resp. right) exact.*

(b) *If T is left (resp. right) t-exact and $K \in \mathcal{D}_1^{\geq 0}$ (resp. $K \in \mathcal{D}_1^{\leq 0}$), we have ${}^pT(H^0(K)) \cong H^0(T(K))$ (resp. $H^0(T(K)) \cong {}^pT(H^0(K))$).*

(c) *Let $T^* : \mathcal{D}_2 \to \mathcal{D}_1 : T_*$ be a pair of adjoint functors. For T^* to be right t-exact, it is necessary and sufficient that T_* is left t-exact, and in this case $({}^pT^*, {}^pT_*)$ is an adjoint pair.*

(d) *If $T_1 : \mathcal{D}_1 \to \mathcal{D}_2$ and $T_2 : \mathcal{D}_2 \to \mathcal{D}_3$ are left (resp. right) t-exact functors, then $T_2 \circ T_1$ is also left (resp. right) t-exact and ${}^p(T_2 \circ T_1) = {}^pT_2 \circ {}^pT_1$.*

Proof. If T is left t-exact, for any short exact sequence $0 \to X \to Y \to Z \to 0$ in $\mathcal{C}_1$, the long exact sequence on cohomology of the distinguished triangle $(T(X), T(Y), T(Z))$ gives an exact sequence

$$0 \to H^0(T(X)) \to H^0(T(Y)) \to H^0(T(Z)),$$

since $T(Z)$ is in $\mathcal{D}_2^{\geq 0}$, so ${}^pT$ is left exact.

For $K \in \mathcal{D}_1^{\geq 0}$, the distinguished triangle $(H^0(K), K, \tau^{>0}K)$ gives a distinguished triangle

$$(T(H^0(K)), T(K), T(\tau^{>0}K))$$

with $T(\tau^{>0}K) \in \mathcal{D}_2^{>0}$, so the long exact sequence on cohomology shows that $H^0(T(H^0(K))) \cong H^0(T(K))$. This (and the dual argument) proves the assertions of (a) and (b).

Let $T^* : \mathcal{D}_2 \to \mathcal{D}_1 : T_*$ be a pair of adjoint functors. If T_* is left t-exact, for $U \in \mathcal{D}_1^{>0}$ and $V \in \mathcal{D}_2^{\leq 0}$, we have $\mathrm{Hom}(T^*(V), U) = \mathrm{Hom}(V, T_*(U)) = 0$. Since this is valid for any U, we have $\tau^{>0}T^*(V) = 0$, i.e. $T^*(V)$ is in $\mathcal{D}_1^{\leq 0}$, so T^* is right t-exact. For $A \in \mathcal{C}_1$ and $B \in \mathcal{C}_2$, we then have $H^0(T^*(B)) = \tau^{\geq 0}T^*(B)$ and $H^0(T_*(A)) = \tau^{\leq 0}T_*(A)$, whence a functorial isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}(H^0(T^*(B)), A) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}(T^*(B), A) = \mathrm{Hom}(A, T_*(B)) \xleftarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}(A, H^0(T_*(B))).$$

This (resp. its dual form) prove the assertions of (c).

Finally, if T_1 and T_2 are left t-exact and that $A \in \mathcal{C}_1$, we have $T_1(A) \in \mathcal{D}_2^{\geq 0}$ and

$${}^p(T_2 \circ T_1)(A) = H^0(T_2(T_1(A))) = H^0(T_2(H^0(T_1(A))))$$

in view of (b). This, together with its dual form, proves (d). $\square$

Remark 1.7.2.18. Let $\mathcal{D}_1^+ = \bigcup_n \mathcal{D}_1^{\geq n}$ and $\mathcal{D}_2^- = \bigcup_n \mathcal{D}_2^{\leq n}$. Then the result of Proposition 1.7.2.17 (c) is still valid for functors $T^* : \mathcal{D}_2^- \to \mathcal{D}_1$ and $T_* : \mathcal{D}_1^+ \to \mathcal{D}_2$ which are adjoint in the sense that $\mathrm{Hom}(T^*(V), U) = \mathrm{Hom}(V, T_*(U))$ for $V \in \mathcal{D}_2^-$ and $U \in \mathcal{D}_2^+$. The proof is the same.

Remark 1.7.2.19. In the situation of Proposition 1.7.2.17 (c), for $A \in \mathcal{C}_1$ and $B \in \mathcal{C}_2$, the adjoint morphisms of (T^*, T_*) and $({}^pT^*, {}^pT_*)$ fit into the commmutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
T^*\,{}^pT_*(A) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & {}^pT^*\,{}^pT_*(A) \arrow[d] \\
T^*T_*(A) \arrow[r] & A
\end{tikzcd}
\qquad
\begin{tikzcd}
B \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & T_*T^*(B) \arrow[d] \\
{}^pT_*\,{}^pT^*(B) \arrow[r] & T_*\,{}^pT^*(B)
\end{tikzcd}$$

Example 1.7.2.20. Let $T : \mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{D}$ be a fully faithful exact functor between triangulated categories. For a triangle (X, Y, Z) of $\mathcal{D}'$ to be distinguished, it is necessary and sufficient that its image under T is diatinguished: by (TR2) we can find a distinguished triangle (X, Y, Z') of $\mathcal{D}'$, whose image under T is then isomorphic to the distinguished triangle $(T(X), T(Y), T(Z))$ by Proposition 1.4.3.13. Since T is fully faithful, this implies that (X, Y, Z) is isomorphic to (X, Y, Z'), so it is distinguished.

Suppose that $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{D}'$ are endowed with t-structures and that T is t-exact. For $X \in \mathcal{D}'$ to belong to $\mathcal{D}'^{\leq 0}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}'^{\geq 0}$), it is it is necessary and sufficient that $T(X)$ is in $\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$). This follows from the fact that $X \in \mathcal{D}'^{\leq 0}$ if and only if $\tau^{>0}X = 0$, and that T commutes with $\tau^{<0}$ (resp. the dual argument).

Conversely, if $\mathcal{D}'$ is a full triangulated subcategory of a triangulated category $\mathcal{D}$ and that $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}$, for that $(\mathcal{D}'^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}'^{\geq 0}) := (\mathcal{D}' \cap \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}' \cap \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}'$, it is necessary and sufficient that $\mathcal{D}'$ is stable under the functor $\tau^{\leq 0}$. If this conditions is satisfied, this t-structure over $\mathcal{D}'$ is called the **induced t-structure**. For $\mathcal{D}'$ endowed with the induced t-structure, the inclusion functor $\mathcal{D}' \to \mathcal{D}$ is then t-exact: we have $\mathcal{C}' = \mathcal{D}' \cap \mathcal{C}$, and the restriction of the functors $\tau^{\leq n}$, $\tau^{\geq n}$ or H^p of $\mathcal{D}$ is identified with the same functors of $\mathcal{D}'$.

Let $(\mathcal{D}_i)_{i\in I}$ be a finite family of triangulated categories and $T : \prod_i \mathcal{D}_i \to \mathcal{D}$ be an exact multifunctor to a triangulated category $\mathcal{D}$. Suppose that the $\mathcal{D}_i$ and $\mathcal{D}$ are endowed with t-structures. We say that T is **left t-exact** (resp. **right t-exact**) if it sends the product of the $\mathcal{D}_i^{\geq 0}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}_i^{\leq 0}$) into $\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$), and **t-exact** if it is both left t-exact and right t-exact. If T is left t-exact (resp. right t-exact, resp. t-exact) and fix certain variables to be an object of $\mathcal{D}_i^{\geq 0}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}_i^{\leq 0}$, resp. $\mathcal{C}_i$, the herat of $\mathcal{D}_i$), the functor obtained in the remaining variables is still left t-exact (resp. right t-exact, resp. t-exact). This allows us to apply some proven results for functors of one variable. For example: let $\varepsilon_i : \mathcal{C}_i \to \mathcal{D}_i$ be the inclusion functor. Put ${}^pT = H^0 \circ T \circ (\varepsilon_i)_{i\in I}$. If T is left (resp. right) t-exact, the additive multifunctor ${}^pT$ is then left (resp. right) exact.

Suppose that T is left t-exact. For $(K_i) \in \prod_i \mathcal{D}_i^{\geq 0}$, we conclude from Proposition 1.7.2.17 (b) that ${}^pT(H^0(K_i)) \cong H^0(T(K_i))$. Therefore, for $(K_i) \in \prod_i \mathcal{D}_i$, the morphisms $K_i \to \tau^{\geq 0}K_i$ then give a morphism

$$H^0(T(K_i)) \to H^0(T(\tau^{\geq 0}K_i)) \xleftarrow{\sim} {}^pT(H^0(K_i)) \tag{1.7.2.7}$$

By translating, we then obtain, for $\sum n_i = n$, a morphism

$$H^n(T(K_i)) \to {}^pT(H^{n_i}(K_i)) \tag{1.7.2.8}$$

There is a problem of signs here, which does not appear if we consider instead

$$H^n(T(K_i)) \to H^nT((H^{n_i}(K_i)[-n_i])) \tag{1.7.2.9}$$

For T right t-exact, we have $H^0T(K_i) \cong {}^pTH^0(K_i)$ for $(K_i) \in \prod_i \mathcal{D}_i^{\leq 0}$, so the morphisms $\tau^{\leq 0}K_i \to K_i$ provides a morphism ${}^pT(H^0(K_i)) \to H^0(T(K_i))$, and by translating, we obtain morphisms

$$H^nT((H^{n_i}(K_i)[-n_i])) \to H^nT(K_i). \tag{1.7.2.10}$$

where $n = \sum_i n_i$.

If T is t-exact, we have both (1.7.2.9) and (1.7.2.10). Applying H^nT to the commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd} \tau^{\leq n_i}K_i \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & H^{n_i}K_i[-n_i] \arrow[d] \\ K_i \arrow[r] & \tau^{\geq n_i}K_i \end{tikzcd}$$

we conclude that the composition of (1.7.2.9) and (1.7.2.10) is the identity. Now if $\sum_i n_i = \sum_i m_i = n$ and that $(n_i)_{i\in I} \neq (m_i)_{i\in I}$, there exists $i \in I$ such that $n_i < m_i$. The composition $\tau^{\leq n_i}K_i \to K_i \to \tau^{\geq m_i}K_i$ is zero, and we deduce that the composition of (1.7.2.9) for (m_i) and (1.7.2.10) for n_i is zero.

Proposition 1.7.2.21. *If T is t-exact and $(K_i) \in \prod_i \mathcal{D}_i^b$, the morphisms (1.7.2.9) and (1.7.2.10) are inverses of each other, so that we have an isomorphism*

$$H^n(T(K_i)) = \bigoplus H^nT((H^{n_i}K_i)[-n_i]) \tag{1.7.2.11}$$

where the sum is taken over $\sum_i n_i = n$.

Proof. We have already seen that these morphisms make the second member a direct factor of the first. Both members of (1.7.2.11) are cohomological functors in each K_i (for the right-hand side, thanks to the exactness of ${}^pT$) and the morphisms (1.7.2.9) and (1.7.2.10) are morphisms of cohomoloaic functors. By dévissage, we are reduced to assume each $K_i \in \mathcal{C}_i$, where the assertion is trivial. □

1.7.3 Recollement

1.7.3.1 Six functors for topological spaces For X a topological space, endowed with a sheaf of rings $\mathcal{O}_X$, we denote by $D(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ the derived category of the abelian category $\mathbf{Mod}(\mathcal{O}_X)$ of sheaf of left $\mathcal{O}_X$-modules over X. As usual, $D^+(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ is the full subcategory consisting of lower bounded complexes.

Let U be an open subset of X and Z be its complement. We denote by $j : U \to X$ and $i : Z \to X$ the canonical inclusions, and by $\mathcal{O}_U$, $\mathcal{O}_Z$ the inverse image of the structural sheaf $\mathcal{O}_X$ over U and Z, respectively. We now describe the construction of glueing a t-structure over $D^+(U, \mathcal{O}_U)$ and that of $D^+(Z, \mathcal{O}_Z)$.

The categories $\mathbf{Mod}(\mathscr{O}_X)$, $\mathbf{Mod}(\mathscr{O}_U)$, and $\mathbf{Mod}(\mathscr{O}_Z)$ are related by the functors

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathbf{Mod}(\mathscr{O}_U) \arrow[r, bend left, "j_!"] \arrow[r, bend right, "j_*"'] & \mathbf{Mod}(\mathscr{O}_X) \arrow[l, "j^*=j^!"'] \arrow[r, bend left, "i^*"] \arrow[r, bend right, "i^!"'] & \mathbf{Mod}(\mathscr{O}_Z) \arrow[l, "i_*=i_!"'] \end{tikzcd}$$

so that we have adjoint pairs $(j_!, j^*, j_*)$ and $(i^*, i_*, i^!)$. We also have identities

$$j^*j_* = 1, \quad j^*j_! = 1, \quad i^!i_* = 1, \quad i^*i_* = 1, \tag{1.7.3.1}$$

$$j^*i_* = 0, \quad i^*j_! = 0, \quad i^!j_* = 0. \tag{1.7.3.2}$$

and for a sheaf $\mathscr{F}$ over X, the adjoint morphisms fit into exact sequences

$$0 \longrightarrow j_!j^*(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow \mathscr{F} \longrightarrow i_*i^*(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.7.3.3}$$

$$0 \longrightarrow i_*i^!(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow \mathscr{F} \longrightarrow j_*j^*(\mathscr{F}) \tag{1.7.3.4}$$

where the last arrow of (1.7.3.4) is surjective if $\mathscr{F}$ is injective.

For an adjoint pair (T^*, T_*), the adjunction morphism $T^*T_* \to \mathrm{id}$ (resp. $\mathrm{id} \to T_*T^*$) is an isomorphism if and only if T_* (resp. T^*) is fully faithful. The assertion (1.7.3.1) is then equivalent to that i_*, j_* and $j_!$ are fully faithful.

For an exact functor T between abelian categories, it trivially extends to the derived categories. We shall use the same symbol for this extension. This extension coincides with the left derived functor LT and the right derived functor RT, whenever they are defined.

The functors described above induce functors over $D^+(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$, $D^+(U, \mathscr{O}_U)$ and $D^+(Z, \mathscr{O}_Z)$, which form adjoint pairs $(j_!, j^*, Rj_*)$ and $(i^*, i_*, Ri^!)$. We have $j^*i_* = 0$, whence by adjunction $i^*j_! = 0$ and $Ri^!Rj_* = 0$. For $K \in K^+(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$, the exact sequences (1.7.3.3) and (1.7.3.3) then gives distinguished triangles $(j_!j^*K, K, i_*i^*K)$ and $(i_*Ri^!K, K, Rj_*j^*K)$. Finally, for $K \in D^+(Z, \mathscr{O}_Z)$ (resp. $K \in D^+(U, \mathscr{O}_U)$), by (1.7.3.1) we have isomorphisms

$$i_*i^*K \cong K \cong Ri^!i_*K, \qquad (\text{resp.} \quad j^*Rj_*K \cong K \cong j^*j_!K.)$$

In fact, j_* and i_* transform injectives to injectives, so we can apply Grothendieck's spectral sequence.

The properties listed above are all that we need to glue t-structures, and we meet them in various contexts: for example, for ℓ-adic derived categories, which do not come strictly within the scope of 1.7.3.1. To cover these cases, we will place ourselves in a more general framework. In this context, the sheaf categories no longer appear (only the triangulated categories appear) and we take advantage of this to lighten the notation by simply writing j_* and i^* for the derived functors Rj_* and $Ri^!$.

1.7.3.2 Recollement of t-structures Let $\mathcal{T}$ be a triangulated category endowed with strictly full subcategories $\mathcal{U}$, $\mathcal{V}$, which are stable under translations. Suppose that for $U \in \mathcal{U}$ and $V \in \mathcal{V}$ we have $\mathrm{Hom}(U, V) = 0$, and that any $X \in \mathcal{T}$ fits into a distinguished triangle (U, X, V), with $U \in \mathcal{U}$ and $V \in \mathcal{V}$. The pair $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ is then a t-structure over $\mathcal{T}$. By Proposition 1.7.2.2, $\mathcal{V}$ is the right orthogonal of $\mathcal{U}$ and $\mathcal{U}$ is the left orthogonal of $\mathcal{V}$. In particular, $\mathcal{U}$ and $\mathcal{V}$ are Serre subcategories of $\mathcal{T}$. The hypothesis (i), (ii) of ([**?**] 6.4, p.25) are then satisfied and by ([**?**] 6.4, p.23-p.26), the projection $\mathcal{T} \to \mathcal{T}/\mathcal{U}$ admits a fully faithful right adjoint, with image $\mathcal{V}$, and the projection $\mathcal{T} \to \mathcal{T}/\mathcal{V}$ admits a fully faithful left adjoint, with image $\mathcal{U}$. In other words, the inclusion $u : \mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{T}$ (resp. $v : \mathcal{V} \to \mathcal{T}$) has a right adjoint $u_\bullet$ (resp. a left adjoint $v^\bullet$) and the sequences

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{U} \xrightarrow{u} \mathcal{T} \xrightarrow{v^\bullet} \mathcal{V} \longrightarrow 0$$

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{V} \xrightarrow{v} \mathcal{T} \xrightarrow{u_\bullet} \mathcal{U} \longrightarrow 0$$

are "exact" in the sense that $v^\bullet$ (resp. $u_\bullet$) identified $\mathcal{V}$ (resp. $\mathcal{U}$) with the quotient of $\mathcal{T}$ by the Serre subcategory $\mathcal{U}$ (resp. $\mathcal{V}$).

Now consider triangulated categories $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{D}_U$ and $\mathcal{D}_Z$ such that we have exact functors

$$\mathcal{D}_Z \xrightarrow{i_*} \mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{j^*} \mathcal{D}_U$$

It is convenient to put $i_! := i_*$ and $j^! = j^*$. Suppose that the following *recollement conditions* are satisfied[3]:

(R1) i_* admits a left adjoint functor i^* and an exact right adjoint functor $i^!$.

(R2) j^* admits a right adjoint functor j_* and an exact left adjoint functor $j_!$.

(R3) $j^*i_* = i^*j_! = i^!j_* = 0$, and therefore for $A \in \mathcal{D}_Z$ and $B \in \mathcal{D}_U$,

$$\mathrm{Hom}(j_!(B), i_*(A)) = \mathrm{Hom}(i_*(A), j_*(B)) = 0.$$

(R4) There are distinguished triangles $(j_!j^*(K), K, i_*i^*(K))$ and $(i_*i^!(K), K, j_*j^*(K))$ for $K \in \mathcal{D}$.

(R5) $i^*i_* \to \mathrm{id} \to i^!i_*$ and $j^*j_* \to \mathrm{id} \to j^*j_!$ are isomorphisms, or equivalently, i_*, $j_!$ and j_* are fully faithful.

Applying the preceding arguments to $\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{D}$, and choose for $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ the pairs of subcategories $(i_*\mathcal{D}_Z, j_*\mathcal{D}_U)$ and $(j_!\mathcal{D}_U, i_*\mathcal{D}_Z)$, we obtain the following exact sequences

$$\begin{tikzcd} 0 & \mathcal{D}_Z \arrow[l] & \mathcal{D} \arrow[l, "i^*"'] & \mathcal{D}_U \arrow[l, "j_!"'] & 0 \arrow[l] \\ 0 \arrow[r] & \mathcal{D}_Z \arrow[r, "i_*"] & \mathcal{D} \arrow[r, "j^*"] & \mathcal{D}_U \arrow[r] & 0 \\ 0 & \mathcal{D}_Z \arrow[l] & \mathcal{D} \arrow[l, "i^!"'] & \mathcal{D}_U \arrow[l, "j_*"'] & 0 \arrow[l] \end{tikzcd}$$

Since the functor i_* is fully faithful, the composition of the adjunction morphisms $i_*i^! \to \mathrm{id} \to i_*i^*$ gives a unique morphism of functors

$$i^! \to i^*. \tag{1.7.3.5}$$

If we apply this to $i_*(X)$ and identify $i^!i_*(X)$ and $i^*i_*(X)$ with X, we obtain the identity morphism of X.

The functor j^* being a quotient functor (it identifies $\mathcal{D}_U$ with the quotient category), the composition of the adjunction morphisms $j_!j^* \to \mathrm{id} \to j_*j^*$ defines a unique morphism of functors

$$j_! \to j_*. \tag{1.7.3.6}$$

If we identify $j^*j_!$ and j^*j_* with the identity functor, then by applying j^* to (1.7.3.6), we obtain the identity morphism of the idnetity functor.

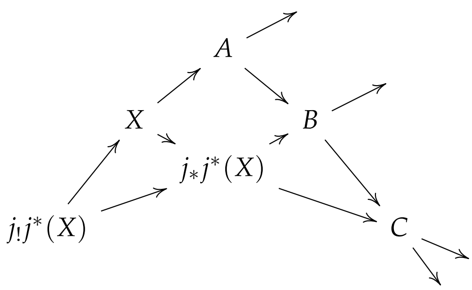
For $X \in \mathcal{D}_U$, the cone of $j_!(X) \to j_*(X)$ is then annihilated by j^*, so it belongs to $i_*\mathcal{D}_F$. By condition (R3) and Proposition 1.7.1.1, the distinguished triangle with base $j_!(X) \to j_*(X)$ is uniquely determined up to unique isomorphisms, so we obtain a functor $j_*/j_! : \mathcal{D}_U \to \mathcal{D}_F$ which fits into a functorial distinguished triangle

$$(j_!, j_*, i_*(j_*/j_!)). \tag{1.7.3.7}$$

The dual construction provides a functor $T : \mathcal{D}_U \to \mathcal{D}_F$, which is characterized by a distinguished triangle $(i_*T, j_!, j_*)$. A triangle of this type is deduced from (1.7.3.7) by rotation, so we have an isomorphism $T = (j_*/j_!)[-1]$. Applying i^* and $i^!$ to the triangle (1.7.3.7) (and its rotation), and noting that $i^*j_! = i^!j_* = 0$, we obtain isomorphisms

$$i^*j_* \xrightarrow{\sim} j_*/j_! \xrightarrow{\sim} i^!j_![1]. \tag{1.7.3.8}$$

Let $X \in \mathcal{D}$ and apply (TR4) to the adjuction morphisms $j_!j^*(X) \to X \to j_*j^*(X)$, we obtain an octahedron



[3] We note that this formalism is selfdual by exchanging $j_!$ with j_* and i^* with $i^!$.

By (R3), (R4) and Proposition 1.7.1.1, there exists a unique isomorphism $A \cong i_*i^*(X)$, which identified $X \to A$ with the adjunction morphism. It also identifies $(j_!j^*X, X, A)$ to the distinguished triangle $(j_!j^*(X), X, i_*i^*(X))$ of (R4).

The same argument, applied to $j_*j^*(X)$, whose image under j^* is X, we see that B is identified with $i_*i^*j_*j^*(X) = i_*(j_*/j_!)j^*(X)$ (cf. (1.7.3.8)) and $j_*j^*(X) \to B$ is identified with the adjunction morphism of (i^*, i_*). By Proposition 1.7.1.1, there is a unique morphism $A \to B$ rendering the upper cap of an octahedron, i.e. a morphism $i_*i^*(X) \to i_*i^*j_*j^*(X)$; this is then deduced from the morphism $X \to j_*j^*(X)$ by adjunction.

Dually, there exists a unique isomorphism from C to $i_*i^!(X)[1]$, which identified the morphism $j_*j^*(X) \to C$ with the $+1$ shift of the adjunction morphism $i_*i^!(X) \to X$ (the triangle $(X, j_*j^*(X), C)$ is obtained by rotating $(i_*i^!(X), X, j_*j^*(X))$). The morphism $B \to C$, which is the unique morphism rendering the commutative square $(B, C, j_!j^*(X), X)$, is then identified, via the isomorphism (1.7.3.8), with the morphism

$$i_*(j_*/j_!)j^*(X) = i_*i^!j_!j^*(X)[1] \to i_*i^!(X)[1]$$

induced from $j_!j^*(X) \to X$ by functoriality.

We have thus determined all the vertices, and all the arrows of the octahedron ($C \to A$ is the composition $C \to X \to A$), and proves its functoriality. If we replace A, B, C by their values, the octahedron is then written as

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & & i_*i^*(X) \arrow[r] \arrow[dr] & {} & & \\
 & X \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & & i_*(j_*/j_!)j^*(X) \arrow[r] \arrow[ddr] & {} & \\
 & & j_*j^*(X) \arrow[ur] \arrow[drr] & & & \\
j_!j^*(X) \arrow[uur] \arrow[urr] & & & & i_*i^!(X)[1] \arrow[r] \arrow[dr] & {} \\
 & & & & & {}
\end{tikzcd} \tag{1.7.3.9}$$

Since i_* is fully faithful, the distinguished triangle $(i_*i^*(X), i_*(j_*/j_!)j^*(X), i_*i^!(X)[1])$ is then the image under i_* of a distinguished triangle $(i^*(X), (j_*/j_!)j^*(X), i^!(X)[1])$. The image under i_* of the $+1$ morphism of this triangle is the composition $i_*i^!X[1] \to X \to i_*i^*(X)$, so $d : i^!(X)[1] \to i^*(X)[1]$ is the morphism (1.7.3.5) for $X[1]$ (the translation of (1.7.3.5) for X). Rotating the triangle, with a sign change for the morphism of degree $+1$ and erasing i_* (cf. Example 1.7.2.20), we obtain a functorial distinguished triangle

$$(i^!, i^*, (j_*/j_!)j^*). \tag{1.7.3.10}$$

Now let $(\mathcal{D}_U^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}_U^{\geq 0})$ be a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}_U$ and $(\mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq 0})$ be a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}_Z$. We define subcategories of $\mathcal{D}$ by

$$\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0} := \{K \in \mathcal{D} : j^*(K) \in \mathcal{D}_U^{\leq 0} \text{ and } i^*(K) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq 0}\},$$
$$\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0} := \{K \in \mathcal{D} : j^*(K) \in \mathcal{D}_U^{\geq 0} \text{ and } i^!(K) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq 0}\}.$$

Theorem 1.7.3.1. *With the preceding hypotheses, $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}$.*

Proof. Let $X \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$ and $Y \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 1}$. The triangle $(j_!j^*(X), X, i_*i^*(X))$ gives the exact sequence

$$\mathrm{Hom}(i^*(X), i^!(Y)) = \mathrm{Hom}(i_*i^*(X), Y) \to \mathrm{Hom}(X, Y) \to \mathrm{Hom}(j_!j^*(X), Y) = \mathrm{Hom}(j^*(X), j^*(Y)).$$

We then conclude from axiom (t2) of $\mathcal{D}_U$ and $\mathcal{D}_Z$ that $\mathrm{Hom}(X, Y) = 0$. Also, in view of the definition above, the axiom (t1) for $\mathcal{D}$ follows from that of $\mathcal{D}_U$ and $\mathcal{D}_Z$.

For $X \in \mathcal{D}$, to verify axiom (t3), we choose objects Y and A so that we have distinguished triangles $(Y, X, j_*\tau^{>0}j^*(X))$ and $(A, Y, i_*\tau^{>0}i^*(Y))$, and apply (TR4):

$$\begin{tikzcd}
 & & i_*\tau^{>0}i^*(Y) \arrow[r] \arrow[dr] & {} & & \\
 & Y \arrow[ur] \arrow[dr] & & B \arrow[r] \arrow[ddr] & {} & \\
 & & X \arrow[ur] \arrow[drr] & & & \\
A \arrow[uur] \arrow[urr] & & & & j_*\tau^{>0}j^*(X) \arrow[r] \arrow[dr] & {} \\
 & & & & & {}
\end{tikzcd}$$

Applying j^*, i^*, $i^!$ to the distinguished triangles in this octahedron, we conclude from (R3) and (R5) that

$$\begin{aligned}
&j^*(i_*\tau^{>0}i^*(Y), B, j_*\tau^{>0}j^*(X)) = (0, j^*(B), \tau^{>0}j^*(X)) && \text{whence } j^*(B) \xrightarrow{\sim} \tau^{>0}j^*(X),\\
&j^*(A, X, B) = (j^*(A), j^*(X), \tau^{>0}j^*(X)) && \text{whence } j^*(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} \tau^{\leq 0}j^*(X),\\
&i^*(A, Y, i_*\tau^{>0}i^*(Y)) = (i^*(A), i^*(Y), \tau^{>0}i^*(Y)) && \text{whence } i^*(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} \tau^{\leq 0}i^*(Y),\\
&i^!(i_*\tau^{>0}i^*(Y), B, j_*\tau^{>0}j^*(X)) = (\tau^{>0}i^*(Y), i^!(B), 0) && \text{whence } \tau^{>0}i^*(Y) \xrightarrow{\sim} i^!(B).
\end{aligned}$$

We then conclude that $A \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$ and $B \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 1}$, and this proves axiom (t3). □

Proposition 1.7.3.2. *Under the hypothesis and notations of Theorem 1.7.3.1, let $(\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ be a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}$. Then the following conditions are equivalent:*

(i) *$j_!j^*$ is right t-exact;*

(i') *j_*j^* is left t-exact;*

(ii) *the t-structure of $\mathcal{D}$ is obtained by glueing.*

Proof. The equivalence of (i) and (i') follows from Proposition 1.7.2.17 (c), and (i), (i') are equivalent to axiom (t2) for $(j^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, j^*\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$. The distinguished triangle $(j_!j^*, \mathrm{id}, i_*i^*)$ and $(i_*i^!, \mathrm{id}, j_*j^*)$ shows respectively that (i) and (i') implies that i_*i^* is right t-exact and $i_*i^!$ is left t-exact, which are equivalent by Proposition 1.7.2.17 (c), and signifies that $(i^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, i^!\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ verifies axiom (t2).

It is clear that (ii)⇒(i), (i'), and that the t-structure over $\mathcal{D}_U$ and $\mathcal{D}_Z$ are such that $\mathcal{D}$ is the glueing of $(j^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, j^*\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ over $\mathcal{D}_U$ and $(i^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, i^!\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ over $\mathcal{D}_Z$. Conversely, if (i) and (i') are satisfied, we verify successively that

(a) $(j^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, j^*\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}_U$. This follows from the fact that j^* is essentially surjective.

(b) $(i^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, i^!\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ is a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}_Z$. Only axiom (t3) is nontrivial: for $X \in \mathcal{D}_Z$, the t-exactness of j^* shows that $j^*\tau^{\leq 0}i_*(X) = \tau^{\leq 0}j^*i_*(X) = 0$, and that similarly $j^*\tau^{>0}i_*(X) = 0$[4]. The truncations $\tau^{\leq 0}i_*(X)$ and $\tau^{>0}i_*(X)$ are therefore in $i_*\mathcal{D}_Z$, and we obtain a distinguished triangle $(i^*\tau^{\leq 0}i_*(X), X, i^*\tau^{>0}i_*(X))$, which proves axiom (t3).

(c) The identity functor of $\mathcal{D}$, endowed with the t-structure over $\mathcal{D}$ and the t-structure obtained by glueing $(j^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, j^*\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ and $(i^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, i^!\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$, is t-exact.

By Example 1.7.2.20, the original t-structure of $\mathcal{D}$ is therefore obtained by glueing $(j^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, j^*\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ and $(i^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, i^!\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$. □

Suppose that we are given a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}_Z$, and apply Theorem 1.7.3.1 to the degenerate t-structure $(\mathcal{D}_U, 0)$ over $\mathcal{D}_U$ and the given t-structure over $\mathcal{D}_Z$. The functor $\tau^{\leq n}$ relative to the t-structure obtained over $\mathcal{D}$ is then denoted by $\tau_Z^{\leq n}$, which is right adjoint to the inclusion of the full subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$ formed by $X \in \mathcal{D}$ such that $i^*(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq n}$. The proof of axiom (t3) in Theorem 1.7.3.1 shows that we have a distinguished triangle

$$(\tau_Z^{\leq n}X, X, i_*\tau^{>n}i^*(X)) \tag{1.7.3.11}$$

(with the notations of Theorem 1.7.3.1, we have $X = Y$ since $j_*\tau^{>0}j^*(X) = 0$). The cohomology functor H^n for this t-structure is then given by $i_*H^ni^*(X)$.

Dually, we define $\tau_Z^{\geq n}$ via the degenerate t-structure $(0, \mathcal{D}_U)$ over $\mathcal{D}_U$, which is left adjoint to the inclusion of the full subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$ formed by $X \in \mathcal{D}$ such that $i^!(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq n}$. We have a distinguished triangle

$$(i_*\tau^{<n}i^!(X), X, \tau_Z^{\geq n}X), \tag{1.7.3.12}$$

and the functor H^n is given by $i_*H^ni^!(X)$.

Similarly, if we are given a t-structure over $\mathcal{D}_U$, and we endow $\mathcal{D}_Z$ with the t-structure $(\mathcal{D}_Z, 0)$ (resp. $(0, \mathcal{D}_Z)$), we can define t-structure over $\mathcal{D}$, and truncation functor $\tau_U^{\leq n}$ (resp. $\tau_U^{\geq n}$), which fit into distinguished triangles

$$(\tau_U^{\leq n}X, X, j_*\tau^{>n}j^*(X)), \qquad (\text{resp.} \quad (j_!\tau^{<n}j^*(X), X, \tau_U^{\geq n}X)). \tag{1.7.3.13}$$

[4]The truncations functor are that for the t-structure $(j^*\mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}, j^*\mathcal{D}^{\geq 0})$ over $\mathcal{D}_U$.

The cohomology functor H^n is given by $j_* H^n j^*(X)$ (resp. $j_! H^n j^*(X)$).

The proof of axiom (t3) in Theorem 1.7.3.1 shows that $\tau^{\leq 0} = \tau_Z^{\leq 0}\tau_U^{\leq 0}$. By translating and duality, we obtain

$$\tau^{\leq n} = \tau_Z^{\leq n}\tau_U^{\leq n}, \quad \tau^{\geq n} = \tau_Z^{\geq n}\tau_U^{\geq n}. \tag{1.7.3.14}$$

Example 1.7.3.3. In the situation of 1.7.3.1 and for the natural t-structure of $D^+(Z, \mathscr{O}_Z)$, the functor $\tau_Z^{\leq n}$ is deduced from the functor of the category of complexes of sheaves into itself which to a complex K associates the subcomplex which coincides with K over U, and with the subcomplex $\tau^{\leq n}K$ over Z.

A **prolongation** of an object Y of $\mathcal{D}_U$ is defined to be an object X of $\mathcal{D}$ endowed with an isomorphism $j^*(X) \cong Y$. Such an isomorphism gives by adjunction morphisms $j_!(Y) \to X \to j_*(Y)$. If $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ is an integer, then from the distinguished triangle (1.7.3.11) (resp. (1.7.3.12)) and (R3), (R5), we see that $\tau_Z^{\geq n} j_!(Y)$ (resp. $\tau_Z^{\leq n} j_*(Y)$) is a prolongation of Y. If a prolongation X is isomorphic as a prolongation to $\tau_Z^{\geq n} j_!(Y)$ (resp. $\tau_Z^{\leq n} j_*(Y)$), the isomorphism $j^*(X) \cong Y$ is then uniquely determined, and we simply write $X = \tau_Z^{\geq n} j_!(Y)$ (resp. $\tau_Z^{\leq n} j_*(Y)$).

Proposition 1.7.3.4. *Let $Y \in \mathcal{D}_U$ and n be an integer. There exists, up to unique isomorphisms, a unique prolongation X of Y such that $i^*(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq n-1}$ and $i^!(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq n+1}$. This prolongation is given by $\tau_Z^{\leq n-1} j_*(Y)$, and we have $\tau_Z^{\leq n-1} j_*(Y) = \tau_Z^{\geq n+1} j_!(Y)$.*

Proof. Let X be a prolongation of Y. The distinguished triangle $(i^*(X), (j_*/j_!)(Y), i^!(X)[1])$ obtained by rotating (1.7.3.10) shows that the following conditions are equivalent:

(i) $i^*(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq n-1}$ and $i^!(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq n+1}$;

(ii) $i^!(X)[1] = \tau^{\geq n}(j_*/j_!)(Y) = \tau^{\geq n} i^* j_*(Y)$;

(ii') $i^*(X) = \tau^{\leq n-1}(j_*/j_!)(Y) = \tau^{\leq n} i^! j_!(Y)[1]$.

The distinguished triangles $(X, j_*(Y), i_* i^!(X)[1])$ of (1.7.3.9) and $(\tau_Z^{\leq n-1}, \mathrm{id}, i_*\tau^{>n-1}i^*)$ then imply that condition (ii) is equivalent to $X = \tau_F^{\leq n-1} j_*(Y)$. Similarly, the triangles $(j_!(Y), X, i_* i^*(X))$ of (1.7.3.9) and $(i_*\tau^{<n+1}i^!, \mathrm{id}, \tau_Z^{\geq n+1})$ imply that condition (ii') is equivalent to $X = \tau_Z^{\geq n+1} j_!(Y)$; we therefore conclude the proposition. □

Remark 1.7.3.5. Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ be an integer and $\mathcal{D}_n$ be the full subcategory of $\mathcal{D}$ formed by objects X such that $i^*(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq n-1}$ and $i^!(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq n+1}$. The functor j^* then induces an equivalence of categories $\mathcal{D}_n \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{D}_U$, and it admits $\tau_Z^{\leq n-1} j_*$ as a quasi-inverse, which we often denote by ${}^p j_{!*}$.

Let $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{C}_U$ and $\mathcal{C}_Z$ be the hearts of the t-categories $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{D}_U$ and $\mathcal{D}_Z$, respectively, where $\mathcal{D}_U$ and $\mathcal{D}_Z$ are endowed with given t-structures, and $\mathcal{D}$ with the glueing t-structure. Denote by ε the inclusions of $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{C}_U$ or $\mathcal{C}_Z$ into $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{D}_U$ or $\mathcal{D}_Z$, and for T the functors $j_!, j^*, j_*, i^*, i_*, i^!$, we denote by ${}^pT$ the functor $H^0 \circ T \circ \varepsilon$. By the definition of the t-structure of $\mathcal{D}$, j^* is t-exact, i^* is right t-exact, and $i^!$ is left t-exact. Applying Proposition 1.7.2.17 (c) and (d), we obtain the following result:

Proposition 1.7.3.6. *Let $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathcal{D}_U$ and $\mathcal{D}_Z$ be triangulated categories as above.*

(a) *The functors $j_!$ and i^* (resp. j_* and $i^!$, resp. j^* and i_*) are right t-exact (resp. left t-exact, resp. t-exact), and we have adjoint triples $({}^pj_!, {}^pj^*, {}^pj_*)$ and $({}^pi^*, {}^pi_*, {}^pi^!)$.*

(b) *The composition ${}^pj^* \circ {}^pi_*$, ${}^pi^* \circ {}^pj_!$ and ${}^pi^! \circ {}^pj_*$ are zero. For $A \in \mathcal{C}_Z$ and $B \in \mathcal{C}_U$, we have*

$$\mathrm{Hom}({}^pj_!(B), {}^pi_*(A)) = \mathrm{Hom}({}^pi_*(A), {}^pj_*(B)) = 0.$$

(c) *For $A \in \mathcal{C}$, the sequences*

$$
\begin{gathered}
{}^pj_!{}^pj^*(A) \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow {}^pi_*{}^pi^*(A) \longrightarrow 0 \\
0 \longrightarrow {}^pi_*{}^pi^!(A) \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow {}^pj_*{}^pj^*(A)
\end{gathered}
$$

are exact.

(d) *The functors ${}^p i_*$, ${}^p j_!$ and ${}^p j_*$ are fully faithful, or equivalently, ${}^p i^* {}^p i_* \to \mathrm{id} \to {}^p i^! {}^p i_*$ and ${}^p j^* {}^p j_* \to \mathrm{id} \to {}^p j^* {}^p j_!$ are isomorphisms.*

Proof. Only the exact sequences in (c) are nontrivial. For this, we note that by Proposition 1.7.2.17 we have ${}^p T_2 \circ {}^p T_1 = H^0(T_2 \circ T_1)$, so for $A \in \mathcal{C}$ we have a long exact sequence

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{+1} H^0(j_! j^*(A)) = {}^p j_! {}^p j^*(A) \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow {}^p i_* {}^p i^*(A) = H^0(i_* i^*(A)) \xrightarrow{+1} \cdots$$

To see that the morphism $A \to H^0(i_* i^*(A))$ is surjective, we note that since $j_!$ is right t-exact and j^* is t-exact, we have $j_! j^*(A) \in \mathcal{D}^{\leq 0}$, so $H^1(j_! j^*(A)) = 0$ and we obtain the first exact sequence in (c). The second one can be deduced similarly, using the fact that j_* is left t-exact and j^* is t-exact (so $j_* j^*(A) \in \mathcal{D}^{\geq 0}$). □

Remark 1.7.3.7. By ${}^p j^* {}^p i_* = 0$ and the exact sequence of (c), for $X \in \mathcal{C}$ to be in the essential image $\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$ of ${}^p i_*$, it is necessary and sufficient that ${}^p j^*(X) = 0$. Since the functor ${}^p j^*$ is exact, this essential image is a Serre subcategory of $\mathcal{C}$. If we identify $\mathcal{C}_Z$ with $\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$ by the fully faithful functor ${}^p i_*$, the adjunctions $({}^p i^*, {}^p i_*)$ and $({}^p i_*, {}^p i_!)$ show that for $X \in \mathcal{C}$, ${}^p i^*(X)$ is the largest quotient of X which is in $\mathcal{C}_Z$, and ${}^p i^!(X)$ is the largest sub-object of X that is in $\mathcal{C}_Z$.

Proposition 1.7.3.8. *The functor ${}^p j^*$ identifies $\mathcal{C}_U$ with the quotient of $\mathcal{C}$ by the Serre subcategory $\mathcal{C}_Z$ (or, more precisely, its iamge $\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$).*

Proof. Let $Q : \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C}/\mathcal{C}_Z$ be the quotient functor. The exact functor ${}^p j^*$ admits a factorization $T \circ Q$:

$$\begin{tikzcd} \mathcal{C} \arrow[rr, "{}^p j^*"] \arrow[dr, "Q"'] & & \mathcal{C}_U \\ & \mathcal{C}/\mathcal{C}_Z \arrow[ur, "T"'] & \end{tikzcd}$$

We note that T is faithful: if a morphism f in $\mathcal{C}/\mathcal{C}_Z$ comes from a morphism f_1 of $\mathcal{C}$, and f is killed by T, then f_1 is killed by ${}^p j^*$. Since ${}^p j^*$ is exact, this implies ${}^p j^*(\mathrm{im}(f_1)) = \mathrm{im}({}^p j^*(f_1)) = 0$, so $\mathrm{im}(f_1) \in \bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$ and f_1 is killed by Q. Since $\mathrm{id} \xrightarrow{\sim} {}^p j^* {}^p j_! = T \circ Q \circ {}^p j_!$, we see that T is essentially surjective, so it remains to verify that T is fully faithful, whence an equivalence of categories.

We note that for $A \in \mathcal{C}$ there is an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow {}^p i_* H^{-1} i^*(A) \longrightarrow {}^p j_! {}^p j^*(A) \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow {}^p i_* {}^p i^*(A) \longrightarrow 0$$

(Note that i_* is t-exact and i^* is right t-exact, so we have $H^{-1}(i_* i^*(A)) = {}^p i_* H^{-1} i^*(A)$ by Proposition 1.7.2.17 (b).) The kernel and cokernel of the morphism ${}^p j_! {}^p j^*(A) \to A$ are therefore in the image of ${}^p i_*$, and any object of $\mathcal{C}/\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$ is then contained in the essential image of ${}^p j_!$. For ${}^p j_!(X)$ and ${}^p j_!(Y)$ in this image, the map

$$T : \mathrm{Hom}(Q^p j_!(X), Q^p j_!(Y)) \to \mathrm{Hom}(TQ^p j_!(X), TQ^p j_!(Y)) = \mathrm{Hom}(X, Y)$$

admits a section $Q^p j_!$, and hence is surjective. This completes the proof. □

Remark 1.7.3.9. In the situation of 1.7.3.1, if we endow $D^+(U, \mathcal{O}_U)$ and $D^+(Z, \mathcal{O}_Z)$ the natural t-structures, then the glueing t-structure on $D^+(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ is the natural t-structure, and the abelian categories $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{C}_U$ and $\mathcal{C}_Z$ are $\mathbf{Mod}(\mathcal{O}_X)$, $\mathbf{Mod}(\mathcal{O}_U)$ and $\mathbf{Mod}(\mathcal{O}_Z)$. In the general case, however, the functor ${}^p j_!$ is only right exact, ${}^p i_*$ is only left exact, and the first sequence of Proposition 1.7.3.6 (c) is not left exact.

Since the functor ${}^p i_*$ is fully faithful, the composition of the adjunction morphisms ${}^p i_* {}^p i^! \to \mathrm{id} \to {}^p i_* {}^p i^*$ is the image under ${}^p i_*$ of a unique morphism of functors

$${}^p i^! \to {}^p i^*. \tag{1.7.3.15}$$

The diagrams of Remark 1.7.2.19 for (i^*, i_*) and $(i_*, i^!)$, and the t-exactness of i_*, imply that for $A \in \mathcal{C}$ we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
{}^p i_* {}^p i_! \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & \mathrm{id} \arrow[r] \arrow[dd, equal] & {}^p i_* {}^p i^* \arrow[d, equal] \\
i_* {}^p i_! \arrow[d] & & i_* {}^p i^* \\
i_* i^! \arrow[r] & \mathrm{id} \arrow[r] & i_* i^* \arrow[u]
\end{tikzcd}$$

Therefore, for $A \in \mathcal{C}$, the morphism ${}^p i^!(A) \to {}^p i^*(A)$ in (1.7.3.15) is given by the composition

$$ {}^p i^!(A) \to i^!(A) \xrightarrow{(1.7.3.5)} i^*(A) \to {}^p i^*(A). \tag{1.7.3.16}$$

By Proposition 1.7.3.6(d), if we apply (1.7.3.15) to ${}^p i_*(A)$ (for $A \in \mathcal{C}_Z$), then we obtain the identity morphism of A.

On the other hand, since the functor ${}^p j^*$ is identified with the quotient functor (Proposition 1.7.3.8), the composition of the adjunction morphisms ${}^p j_! {}^p j^* \to \mathrm{id} \to {}^p j_* {}^p j^*$ provides a unique morphism of functors

$$ {}^p j_! \to {}^p j_*. \tag{1.7.3.17}$$

Similarly, the diagrams of Remark 1.7.2.19 for (j^*, j_*) and $(j_!, j^*)$, together with the t-exactness of j^*, imply that for $A \in \mathcal{C}$ we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
{}^p j_! {}^p j^* \arrow[r] \arrow[d, equal] & \mathrm{id} \arrow[r] \arrow[dd, equal] & {}^p j_* {}^p j^* \arrow[d, equal] \\
{}^p j_! j^* & & {}^p j_* j^* \arrow[d] \\
j_! j^* \arrow[r] \arrow[u] & \mathrm{id} \arrow[r] & j_* j^*
\end{tikzcd}$$

Therefore, for $B \in \mathcal{C}_U$, the morphism $j_!(B) \to j_*(B)$ of (1.7.3.17) is the composition

$$ j_!(B) \to \tau^{\geq 0} j_!(B) = {}^p j_!(B) \xrightarrow{(1.7.3.6)} {}^p j_*(B) = \tau^{\leq 0} j_*(B) \to j_*(B). \tag{1.7.3.18}$$

By Proposition 1.7.3.6(d), if we apply ${}^p j_*$ to (1.7.3.17), then we obtain the identity morphism. In particular, for $B \in \mathcal{C}_U$, the kernel and cokernel of ${}^p j_!(B) \to {}^p j_*(B)$ are in ${}^p i_* \mathcal{C}_Z$.

Definition 1.7.3.10. The functor $j_{!*} : \mathcal{C}_U \to \mathcal{C}$ is defined to be the functor which to $B \in \mathcal{C}_U$ associates the image of ${}^p j_!(B)$ into ${}^p j_*(B)$.

For $B \in \mathcal{C}_U$, (1.7.3.18) shows that we have the following factorization of the morphism $j_!(B) \to j_*(B)$ of (1.7.3.6):

$$ j_!(B) \to {}^p j_!(B) \to j_{!*}(B) \to {}^p j_*(B) \to j_*(B) \tag{1.7.3.19}$$

Proposition 1.7.3.11. *For $B \in \mathcal{C}_U$, we have*

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^p j_!(B) &= \tau_Z^{\geq 0} j_!(B) = \tau_Z^{\leq -2} j_*(B), \\
j_{!*}(B) &= \tau_Z^{\geq 1} j_!(B) = \tau_Z^{\leq -1} j_*(B), \\
{}^p j_*(B) &= \tau_Z^{\geq 2} j_!(B) = \tau_Z^{\leq 0} j_*(B).
\end{aligned}$$

More precisely, ${}^p j_!(B)$, endowed with the morphism $j_!(B) \to {}^p j_!(B)$, is isomorphic to $\tau_Z^{\geq 0} j_!(B)$, and so on.

Proof. Since $j^* j_!(B) \cong B$ is in $\mathcal{C}_U$, we see that $j_!(B)$ is stable under $\tau_U^{\geq 0}$. By (1.7.3.14) and Proposition 1.7.3.6 (a), we then have ${}^p j_!(B) = \tau^{\geq 0} j_!(B) = \tau_Z^{\geq 0} j_!(B)$, and Proposition 1.7.3.4 shows that $\tau_Z^{\geq 0} j_!(B) = \tau_Z^{\leq -2} j_*(B)$. Similarly, since $j^* j_*(B) \cong B$, we have ${}^p j_*(B) = \tau_Z^{\leq 0} j_*(B) = \tau_Z^{\geq 2} j_!(B)$.

The determination $H^n = i_* H^n i^!$ for the t-structure defining $\tau_Z^{\geq n}$ shows that we have a distinguished triangle

$$(i_* H^0 i^! j_!(B), \tau_Z^{\geq 0} j_!(B), \tau_Z^{\geq 1} j_!(B)) = (i_* H^0 i_! j_!(B), {}^p j_!(B), \tau_Z^{\geq 1} j_!(B)),$$

which implies that $\tau_Z^{\geq 1} j_!(B) \in \mathcal{D}^{[-1,0]}$. A dual argument provides a distinguished triangle

$$(\tau_Z^{\leq -1} j_*(B), \tau_F^{\leq 0} j_*(B), i_* H^0 i^* j_*(B)) = (\tau_Z^{\leq -1} j_*(B), {}^p j_*(B), i_* H^0 i^*(B)),$$

which shows that $\tau_Z^{\leq -1} j_*(B) \in \mathcal{D}^{[0,1]}$. By Proposition 1.7.3.4, we then conclude that $\tau_Z^{\geq 1} j_!(B) = \tau_Z^{\leq -1} j_*(B)$ belongs to $\mathcal{C}$, and the above triangles produce short exact sequences

$$0 \longrightarrow i_* H^0 i^! j_!(B) \longrightarrow {}^p j_!(B) \longrightarrow \tau_Z^{\geq 1} j_!(B) \longrightarrow 0$$

$$0 \longrightarrow \tau_Z^{\leq -1} j_*(B) \longrightarrow {}^p j_*(B) \longrightarrow i_* H^0 i^* j_*(B) \longrightarrow 0$$

These together show that $\tau_Z^{\geq 1} j_!(B) = \tau_Z^{\leq -1} j_*(B)$ is the image $j_{!*}(B)$ of ${}^p j_!(B)$ in ${}^p j_*(B)$. □

Corollary 1.7.3.12. *For $B \in \mathcal{C}_U$, $j_{!*}(B)$ is the unique prolongation X of B in $\mathcal{D}$ such that $i^*(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq -1}$ and $i^!(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq 1}$.*

Proof. This follows from Proposition 1.7.3.4. Similarly, ${}^p j_!(B)$ (resp. ${}^p j_*(B)$) is the unique prolongation X such that $i^*(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq -2}$ (resp. $\mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq 0}$) and $i^!(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq 0}$ (Resp. $\mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq 2}$). □

Corollary 1.7.3.13. *For $B \in \mathcal{C}_U$, $j_{!*}(B)$ is the unique prolongation X of B in $\mathcal{C}$ with no nontrivial sub-object or quotient in the essential image $\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$ of $\mathcal{C}_Z$ under ${}^p i_*$.*

Proof. By definition, $j_{!*}(B)$ is in $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathcal{D}$. For any prolongation $X \in \mathcal{C}$ of B, we have $i^*(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq 0}$, and $i^*(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\leq -1}$ if and only if ${}^p i^*(X) = 0$. Dually, $i^!(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq 0}$, and $i^!(X) \in \mathcal{D}_Z^{\geq 1}$ if and only if ${}^p i^!(X) = 0$. Identify $\mathcal{C}_Z$ with $\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$ via ${}^p i_*$. Since ${}^p i^*(X)$ (resp. ${}^p i^!(X)$) is the largets quotient (resp. sub-object) of X which is in $\mathcal{C}_Z$ (cf. Remark 1.7.3.7), the characterization Corollary 1.7.3.13 of $j_{!*}(B)$ follows from Corollary 1.7.3.12. □

Proposition 1.7.3.14. *The simple objects of $\mathcal{C}$ are the ${}^p i_*(S)$, for S simple in $\mathcal{C}_Z$, and the $j_{!*}(S)$, for S simple in $\mathcal{C}_U$.*

Proof. Since the essential image $\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$ of $\mathcal{C}_Z$ under ${}^p i_*$ is a Serre subcategory of $\mathcal{C}$, for an object $X \in \mathcal{C}$ to be simple, it is necessary and sufficient that one of the following conditions is satisfied:

(a) $X \in \bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$ and is simple in $\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$;

(b) the image of X in $\mathcal{C}/\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$ is simple, and X has no nontrial sub-object or quotient in $\bar{\mathcal{C}}_Z$.

The case (a) corresponds to $X = {}^p i_*(S)$, for S simple in $\mathcal{C}_Z$, and by Corollary 1.7.3.13 and Proposition 1.7.3.8, case (b) corresponds to $X = j_{!*}(S)$, for S simple in $\mathcal{C}_U$. □

1.7.4 Perverse t-structure

In this subsection, we construct the perverse t-structure on stratified topological spaces and schemes. The essential idea is that if X is a stratified space, then we can glue the natural t-structure of each stratum S (possibly shifted by an integer depending on S) to obtain a new t-structure on X, called a *perverse t-structure* over X.

1.7.4.1 Stratified spaces Let X be a topological space endowed with a structural sheaf of rings $\mathscr{O}_X$, $\mathcal{S}$ be a finite partition of X by locally closed subsets (a *stratification*), and $p : \mathcal{S} \to \mathbb{Z}$ be a function (called the **perversity**). By definition, the stratum S is nonempty. We further suppose that the closure of any strarum is a union of strata.

For a continuous map $f : X \to Y$, we shall simply write $f_!$, f_*, $f^!$, f^* for the derived functors $Rf_!$, Rf_*, $Rf^!$, Lf^*. This notation is motivated by the fact that we often work with the derived categories, rather than the module categories. The corresponding functors on module categories will be denoted by ${}^0 f_!$, ${}^0 f_*$, ${}^0 f^!$, ${}^0 f^*$.

Definition 1.7.4.1. We denote by ${}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ (resp. ${}^{p}D^{\geq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$) the subcategory of $D(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ formed by complexes $\mathcal{F}$ in $D(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ (resp. $\mathcal{F}$ in $D^+(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$) such that for any strata $S\in\mathcal{S}$, we have $H^n(i_S^*(\mathcal{F}))=0$ for $n>p(S)$ (resp. $H^n(i_S^!(\mathcal{F}))=0$ for $n<p(S)$), where $i_S:S\to X$ denote the inclusion map.

The exactness of the functor ${}^0i^*$ allows us to give another definition for ${}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$: for $\mathcal{F}$ to be in ${}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, it is necessary and sufficient that the restriction of $H^i(\mathcal{F})$ to S is zero for $i>p(S)$. The truncation functors $\tau^{\leq n}$ and $\tau^{\geq n}$, relative to the natrual t-structure of $D(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, therefore sends ${}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ into itself.

Remark 1.7.4.2. If the functors ${}^0i_S^!$ have finite cohomological dimensions, then $i_S^!:D^+(X,\mathcal{O}_X)\to D^+(S,\mathcal{O}_S)$ has a natural extension $D(X,\mathcal{O}_X)\to D(S,\mathcal{O}_S)$, still denoted by $i_S^!$. In this case, the condition "$H^n(i_S^!(\mathcal{F}))=0$ for $n<p(S)$" makes sense for any complex $\mathcal{F}$ in $D(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$. In fact, it implies that $\mathcal{F}\in D^+(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, or more precisely, that $\mathcal{F}\in D^{\geq n}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ for $p\geq n$. To see this, we shall prove by descendent induction on the strata $\mathcal{S}$ (for the order $S_1\subseteq\bar{S}_2$) that the restriction of $H^i(\mathcal{F})$ to S is zero for $i<n$. We first note that the distinguished triangle $(\tau^{<n}\mathcal{F},\mathcal{F},\tau^{\geq n}\mathcal{F})$ and the left exactness of ${}^0i_S^!$ imply that $H^i(i_S^!\tau^{<n}\mathcal{F})\xrightarrow{\sim}H^i(i_S^!(\mathcal{F}))$ for $i<n$. The induction hypothesis shows that $H^j(\tau^{<n}\mathcal{F})$ is zero over the strata $T\neq S$ such that $S\subseteq\overline{T}$, so S admits an neighborhood in which $H^j(\tau^{<n}\mathcal{F})$ is supported in S. We then have

$$H^i(\mathcal{F})|_S=H^i(i_S^*(\tau^{<n}\mathcal{F}))=H^i(i_S^!(\tau^{<n}\mathcal{F})),$$

and the last member is zero by our hypothesis (since $i<n\leq p(S)$).

Without the hypothesis on cohomological dimension, the same argument is applicable for $\mathcal{F}\in D^+(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, and for integers $a\leq p\leq b$, we have

$$D^{\leq a}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)\subseteq{}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)\subseteq D^{\leq b}(X,\mathcal{O}_X),\tag{1.7.4.1}$$

$$D^{\geq a}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)\supseteq{}^{p}D^{\geq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)\supseteq D^{\geq b}(X,\mathcal{O}_X).\tag{1.7.4.2}$$

We denote by ${}^{p}D^{+,\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ the intersection of $D^+(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ with ${}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, and similarly for $+$ replaced by $-,b$ and 0 replaced by $n\in\mathbb{Z}$.

Proposition 1.7.4.3. *For any perversity p, $({}^{p}D^{+,\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X),{}^{p}D^{+,\geq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X))$ is a t-structure over $D^+(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$.*

Proof. We preceed by induction on the number N of the stratum. If $N=0$, we have $X=\varnothing$, and the assertion is trivial. If $N=1$, then we obtain the natrual t-structure on $D^+(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, translated by $p(X)$. For $N\geq 2$, let Z be a proper closed subset of X which is a union of strata, and U be its complement. The induction hypothesis, applied to Z and U, endowed with the induced stratification, gives t-structures over $D^+(U,\mathcal{O}_U)$ and $D^+(Z,\mathcal{O}_Z)$. The t-structure considered over $D^+(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ is then obtained by glueing: this is clear for ${}^{p}D^{+,\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, since i_S^* is exact. As for ${}^{p}D^{+,\geq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, we note that for $\mathcal{F}\in D^+(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ and $S\in\mathcal{S}$, we have

$$H^n(i_{S\cap U}^!j^*(\mathcal{F}))=H^n(i_{S\cap U}^!j^!(\mathcal{F}))=H^n(i_{S\cap U}^!(\mathcal{F})),$$
$$H^n(i_{S\cap Z}^!i^!(\mathcal{F}))=H^n(i_{S\cap Z}^!(\mathcal{F})).$$

On the other hand, since Z is a union of strata, S is either disjoint from Z or contained in Z, so we conclude that $H^n(i_S^!(\mathcal{F}))=0$ if and only if $H^n(i_{S\cap U}^!j^*(\mathcal{F}))=H^n(i_{S\cap Z}^!i^!(\mathcal{F}))=0$. We can then apply Theorem 1.7.3.1 to conclude the proposition. □

Corollary 1.7.4.4. *The pair $({}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X),{}^{p}D^{\geq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X))$ is a t-structure over $D(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$. It induces a t-structure over $D^*(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ for $*\in\{+,-,b\}$.*

Proof. Let a,b be integers such that $a\leq p\leq b$. For $\mathcal{F}\in{}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ and $\mathcal{G}\in{}^{p}D^{\geq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, we have $\mathrm{Hom}(\tau^{\leq a}\mathcal{F},\mathcal{G})=0$ since L is in $D^{>a}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, and $\mathrm{Hom}(\tau^{>a}\mathcal{F},\mathcal{G})=0$ since $\tau^{>a}\mathcal{F}$ is in ${}^{p}D^{+,\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ and we can apply Proposition 1.7.4.3. We then conclude from the long exact sequence of Hom induced from the distinguished triangle $(\tau^{\leq a}\mathcal{F},\mathcal{F},\tau^{>a}\mathcal{F})$ that $\mathrm{Hom}(\mathcal{F},\mathcal{G})=0$. Finally, for any $\mathcal{F}\in D(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, by Proposition 1.7.4.3, there exists a distinguished triangle $(\mathcal{M},\tau^{>a}\mathcal{F},\mathcal{N})$ with $\mathcal{M}\in{}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$ and $\mathcal{N}\in{}^{p}D^{\geq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$. Applying (TR4), we obtain two distinguished triangles $(\tau^{\leq a}\mathcal{F},\mathcal{G},\mathcal{M})$ and $(\mathcal{G},\mathcal{F},\mathcal{N})$. The first one shows that $\mathcal{G}$ is in ${}^{p}D^{\leq 0}(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, and the second one proves axiom (t3). The axiom (t1) being trivial, we then obtain a t-structure over $D(X,\mathcal{O}_X)$, which is called the ***t*-structure of perversity** p. □

Let ${}^p\tau$ be the corresponding truncation functor of the perverse t-structure. Since we have

$$ {}^pD^{\leq 0}(X,\mathscr{O}_X) \subseteq D^{\leq b}(X,\mathscr{O}_X), \quad {}^pD^{\geq 0}(X,\mathscr{O}_X) \subseteq D^{\geq a}(X,\mathscr{O}_X), $$

the (usual) cohomology long exact sequence of the distinguished triangle $({}^p\tau^{\leq 0}\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{F}, {}^p\tau^{\geq 1}\mathscr{F})$ shows that $H^i({}^p\tau^{\leq 0}\mathscr{F}) = H^i(\mathscr{F})$ for $i < a$ and $H^i({}^p\tau^{\leq 0}\mathscr{F}) = H^i(\mathscr{F})$ for $i > b$. It follows that ${}^p\tau^{\leq 0}$ and ${}^p\tau^{\geq 0}$ preserves $D^*(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$ for $* \in \{+,-,b\}$.

Definition 1.7.4.5. The heart $\mathrm{Perv}(X,\mathscr{O}_X,p)$ of the t-structure $({}^pD^{\leq 0}(X,\mathscr{O}_X), {}^pD^{\geq 0}(X,\mathscr{O}_X))$ is called **the category of sheaves of p-perverse $\mathscr{O}_X$-modules over** X. This is an admissible abelian subcategory of $D(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$.

Proposition 1.7.4.6. *Let W be a locally closed subset of X which is a union of strata, and $j : W \to X$ be the inclusion. For any perversity p, the functors $j_! : D(W,\mathscr{O}_W) \to D(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$ and $j^* : D(X,\mathscr{O}_X) \to D(W,\mathscr{O}_W)$ are right t-exact, and $j^! : D(X,\mathscr{O}_X) \to D(W,\mathscr{O}_W)$ and $j_* : D(W,\mathscr{O}_W) \to D(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$ are left t-exact.*

Proof. Let $\mathscr{F} \in {}^pD^{\leq 0}(W,\mathscr{O}_W)$ and $\mathscr{G} \in {}^pD^{\leq 0}(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$. We note that for any stratum S contained in W, if $i_S^W : S \to W$ denotes the inclusion map, we have (cf. **??** and **??**)

$$ i_S^* j_!(\mathscr{F}) = (i_S^W)^*(j^* j_!(\mathscr{F})) \cong (i_S^W)^*(\mathscr{F}), \quad (i_S^W)^* j^*(\mathscr{G}) = i_S^*(\mathscr{G}) $$

from which we conclude that $j_!(\mathscr{F}) \in {}^pD^{\leq 0}(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$ and $j^*(\mathscr{G}) \in {}^pD^{\leq 0}(W,\mathscr{O}_W)$. The rest of the proposition follows from Proposition 1.7.2.17 (c). □

To simplify the notation, we shall omit $(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$ and write D for $D(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$. We also sometimes write $D^{\leq p}$ (resp. $D^{\geq p}$) for ${}^pD^{\leq 0}$ (resp. ${}^pD^{\geq 0}$). If p has constant value a, then $D^{\leq p} = D^{\leq a}$ (the natural t-structure), and $D^{\geq p} = D^{\geq a}$. For any integer n, we have $D^{\leq p+n} = {}^pD^{\leq n}$ and $D^{\geq p+n} = {}^pD^{\geq n}$. Finally, for $p \leq q$, we have $D^{\leq p} \subseteq D^{\leq q}$ and $D^{\geq p} \supseteq D^{\geq q}$, which generalizes (1.7.4.1) and (1.7.4.2). Similarly, we write $\tau^{\leq p}$ and $\tau^{\geq p}$ for ${}^p\tau^{\leq 0}$ and ${}^p\tau^{\geq 0}$, and H^p for H^0 in the sense of the t-structure of perversity p.

In the situation of Proposition 1.7.4.6, we denote simply by $j_!$, $j^!$, j_* and j^* the functors on derived categories. The functors deduced from them by passing to p-perverse sheaves will be denoted with p as a left exponent. For example, for $\mathscr{A} \in \mathrm{Perv}(U,\mathscr{O}_U,p)$, we put ${}^pj_!(\mathscr{A}) = \tau^{\geq p} j_!(\mathscr{A}) = H^p(j_!(\mathscr{A}))$. By Proposition 1.7.2.17, $({}^pj_!, {}^pj^!)$ and $({}^pj^*, {}^pj_*)$ are adjoint pairs of functors. The induced functors on the category of usual sheaves of modules will be denoted with 0 as a left exponent.

For $\mathscr{A}$ a p-perverse sheaf over U, $j_!(\mathscr{A})$ is in $D^{\leq p}(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$ and $j_*(\mathscr{A})$ is in $D^{\geq p}(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$. The natural morphism $\alpha : j_!(\mathscr{A}) \to j_*(\mathscr{A})$ admits a factorization

$$ j_!(\mathscr{A}) \to {}^pj_!(\mathscr{A}) \xrightarrow{\beta} {}^pj_*(\mathscr{A}) \to j_*(\mathscr{A}) $$

where $\beta = {}^pH^0(\alpha)$. We then define the functor ${}^pj_{!*}$, or simply $j_{!*}$, by

$$ j_{!*}(\mathscr{A}) = \mathrm{im}({}^pj_!(\mathscr{A}) \to {}^pj_*(\mathscr{A})). $$

On the other hand, for $\mathscr{B}$ a p-perverse sheaf over X, we define a canonical morphism ${}^pj^!(\mathscr{B}) \to {}^pj^*(\mathscr{B})$ as the composition

$$ {}^pj^!(\mathscr{B}) \to j^!(\mathscr{B}) \to j^*(\mathscr{B}) \to {}^pj^*(\mathscr{B}). $$

If $k : U \to V$ and $j : V \to X$ are locally closed subsets which are unions of strata, the transitivity formule for the functors $k_!, k^!, k_*, k^*$ and $j_!, j^!, j_*, j^*$ imply the similar fomule for the functors on p-perverse sheaves (Proposition 1.7.2.17 (d)). Applying ${}^pj_!$, ${}^pj_*$ and ${}^pj_*$ to the morphisms ${}^pk_! \twoheadrightarrow {}^pk_{!*} \hookrightarrow {}^pk_*$, we obtain a chain

$$ {}^p(jk)_! = {}^pj_!{}^pk_! \twoheadrightarrow {}^pj_!{}^pk_{!*} \twoheadrightarrow {}^pj_{!*}{}^pk_{!*} \hookrightarrow {}^pj_*{}^pk_{!*} \hookrightarrow {}^pj_*{}^pk_* = {}^p(jk)_* $$

which gives an isomorphism of functors

$$ {}^p(jk)_{!*} = {}^pj_{!*}{}^pk_{!*}. \tag{1.7.4.3} $$

Remark 1.7.4.7. Let U be an open subset of X which is a union of strata, and Z be its complement, endowed with the induced stratifications. The t-structure of Proposition 1.7.4.3 over $D^+(X,\mathscr{O}_X)$ is then induced by that of $D^+(U,\mathscr{O}_U)$ and $D^+(Z,\mathscr{O}_Z)$ by glueing, and we can apply the formalism of 1.7.3.2. Let $i : Z \to X$ and $j : U \to X$ be the inclusion maps, the functors $(j_!, j^*, j_*)$, $(i^*, i_*, i^!)$, and $j_{!*}$, thus coincide with the situation of 1.7.3.2.

Proposition 1.7.4.8. *For $\mathscr{B} \in \mathrm{Perv}(U, \mathscr{O}_U, p)$, $j_{!*}(\mathscr{B})$ is the unique prolongation $\mathscr{P}$ of $\mathscr{B}$ such that, for any stratum $S \subseteq Z$, we have $H^i(s^*(\mathscr{P})) = 0$ for $i \geq p(S)$ and $H^i(s^!(\mathscr{P})) = 0$ for $i \leq p(S)$, where $s : S \to X$ is the inclusion map.*

Proof. This follows from Proposition 1.7.3.11. More precisely, it follows from Remark 1.7.3.5 that if $\mathcal{D}'$ is the subcategory of $D(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$ formed by $\mathscr{F}$ such that $H^i(s^*(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ for $i \geq p(S)$ and $H^i(s^!(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ for $i \leq p(S)$ for any strata $s : S \to Z$, then j^* induces an equivalence $\mathcal{D}' \to D(U, \mathscr{O}_U)$. Its restriction to $\mathcal{D}' \cap \mathrm{Perv}(X, \mathscr{O}_X, p)$ is then an equivalence $\mathcal{D}' \cap \mathrm{Perv}(X, \mathscr{O}_X, p) \to \mathrm{Perv}(U, \mathscr{O}_U, p)$, with quasi-inverse $j_{!*}$. We have similar characterizations for ${}^p j_!(\mathscr{B})$ and ${}^p j_*(\mathscr{B})$ (cf. Proposition 1.7.3.11). □

Suppose that the perversity p satisfies the following condition: if $S \subseteq \overline{T}$, then $p(S) \geq p(T)$ (in this case, we say that p is **decreasing**). For each $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, the union Z_n (resp. U_n) of the strata S such that $p(S) \geq n$ (resp. $p(S) \leq n$); Z_n (resp. U_n) is then closed (resp. open). We denote by $j_n : U_{n-1} \to U_n$ and $i_n : Z_{n-1} \to Z_n$ the inclusion maps.

Proposition 1.7.4.9. *With the hypothesis and notations above, let $\mathscr{A}$ be a p-perverse sheaf over U_k and $a \geq k$ be an integer such that $p \leq a$. If $j : U_k \to X = U_a$ denotes the inclusion map, then*

$$j_{!*}(\mathscr{A}) = \tau^{\leq a-1} j_{a,*} \cdots \tau^{\leq k} j_{k+1,*}(\mathscr{A}),$$

where the $\tau^{\leq i}$ are relative to the natural t-structure.

Proof. Applying (1.7.4.3), and noting that $j = j_a \cdots j_{k+1}$, it suffices to prove that $j_{k+1,!*}(\mathscr{A}) = \tau^{\leq k} j_{k+1,*}(\mathscr{A})$ for each $k \in \mathbb{Z}$. If $Z = U_{k+1} - U_k$, then by Proposition 1.7.3.11 we have $j_{k+1,!*}(\mathscr{A}) = {}^p\tau_Z^{\leq -1} j_{k+1,*}(\mathscr{A})$. On the other hand, over Z, the function p is constant with value $k+1$, so ${}^p\tau_Z^{\leq -1}$ is none other than the functor $\tau_Z^{\leq k}$ (for the natural t-structure over Z). Since over U_k we have $p \leq k$, $\mathscr{A}$ belongs to $D^{\leq k}(U, \mathscr{O}_U)$ (cf. (1.7.4.1)) and we conclude from (1.7.3.14) that $\tau^{\leq k} j_{k+1,*}(\mathscr{A}) \cong \tau_Z^{\leq k} j_{k+1,*}(\mathscr{A})$. □

Remark 1.7.4.10. Let's explain the relationship between our notations and that of Mr. Goresky and R. MacPherson ([?] and [?]).

- They work with cohomology with coefficients in a field $\mathbb{K}$ (especially $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$), i.e. they take for $\mathscr{O}_X$ the constant sheaf with value $\mathbb{K}$.
- Their strata are topological manifolds, everywhere of the same dimension, and the stratification satisfies a triviality condition which ensures that for $j : S \to X$ a stratum and $\mathscr{F}$ a locally constant sheaf of $\mathbb{K}$-vector spaces of finite dimension over S, the restrictions at each stratum of the $R^i j_*(\mathscr{F})$ are again locally constants of finite dimension. For S, T two stratum with $S \subseteq \overline{T} - T$, we have $\dim(S) < \dim(T)$.
- The space X has an open dense stratum U_0 whose complement satisfies $\dim(U_0) - \dim(X - U_0) \geq 2$.
- The perversity function only depends on the dimension: we have a function $\bar{p} : \mathbb{N} \to \mathbb{Z}$ such that $p(S) = \bar{p}(\dim(S))$. The function $\bar{p}$ is assumed to be decreasing and positive, with $p(U_0) = \bar{p}(\dim(U_0)) = 0$.

Let $j : U_0 \to X$ be the inclusion map, we are concerned with the object $j_{!*}(\mathbb{K})$ of $D^b(X, \mathbb{K})$. If we are given the description of Proposition 1.7.4.9, we are then led to utilize the function p' which satisfies $p'(U_0) = 0$ and attach for each stratum $S \neq U_0$ the integer $p(S) - 1$. The operator $j_{!*}$ consists, starting from the constant sheaf $\mathbb{K}$ over $U = U_0$, of successively adding to U the strata S of dimension $\dim(U_0) - 2$, $\dim(U_0) - 3, \cdots$, and each time taking a direct image, truncated by $\tau^{\leq p'(S)}$. It is the functor p' that they call *perversity*. From the point of view adopted here, this amounts to describing ${}^p j_{!*}$ as being ${}^{p'} j_*$, and leads to discrepancies in the description of duality phenomena.

Goresky and MacPherson also assume that the function $\bar{p}$ does not decrease too fast: $\bar{p}(n) - \bar{p}(n+1) = 0$ or 1. The result of Proposition 1.7.4.12 below shows that this provides the independence of the perverse t-structure of the stratification.

We now adapt the following assumption on the stratified space $(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$:

(P1) $\mathscr{O}_X$ is the constant sheaf with value R, for R a left Noetherian ring.

(P2) The strata are topological manifolds with equal dimension. If two strata S, T satisfy $S \subseteq \overline{T}$, then $\dim(S) < \dim(T)$.

(P3) For $j : S \to X$ a stratum, the functor ${}^0 j_*$ is of finite cohomological dimension over the category of R-modules. For any locally constant sheaf $\mathscr{F}$ of R-modules of finite type over S, the higher direct images $R^q j_*(\mathscr{F})$ are locally free of finite type over any stratum.

For U a locally closed subset which is a union of strata, we denote by $D_c(U, R)$ (or $D_{\mathcal{S}}(U, R)$ if we want to stress the stratification $\mathcal{S}$) the triangulated full subcategory of $D(U, R)$ formed by constructible complexes $\mathscr{F}$ such that $H^i(\mathscr{F})$ is locally free and of finite type over each stratum of $\mathcal{S}$. We define similarly subcategories $D_c^*(U, R)$ for $* \in \{+, -, b\}$.

Proposition 1.7.4.11. *For $j : U \to V$ with U and V being locally closed and are unions of strata, the functors $j_!$, $j^!$, j_* and j^* preserve these subcategories.*

Proof. In fact, the case for $j_!$ and j^* are trivial, and for the case where U is reduced to a single stratum, the assertion for j_* follows from the spectral sequence $R^p j_* H^q(\mathscr{F}) \to H^{p+q}(Rj_*(\mathscr{F}))$ and condition (P3). The general case can then be proved by induction on the number of strara in U: If $k : S \to U$ is the inclusion of an open stratum in U, and $\mathscr{G}$ is defined by the distinguished triangle $(\mathscr{F}, k_*k^*(\mathscr{F}), \mathscr{G})$, then $\mathscr{G}$ is constructible because $k_*k^*(\mathscr{F})$ is, and is supported in $U' = U - S$. The induction hypothesis can be applied to the inclusion $U' \to X$, and $j_*(\mathscr{G})$ is then constructible; we deduce from the distinguished triangle $(j_*(\mathscr{F}), (jk)_*k^*(\mathscr{F}), j_*(\mathscr{G}))$ that $j_*(\mathscr{F})$ is constructible. Finally, the case for $j^!$ is reduced to the case where j is a closed embedding, and this can deduced from the distinguished triangle $(j_!j^!(\mathscr{F}), \mathscr{F}, k_*k^*(\mathscr{F}))$ and the assertion for k_*, where k the embedding of the open complement. $\square$

For $Z \subseteq U$ a closed subset which is a union of strata, by Example 1.7.3.3, the functor $\tau_Z^{\leq a}$ trivially respects $D_c(U, R)$. The proof of Theorem 1.7.3.1 then shows that for any perversity p, $\tau^{\leq p}$ and $\tau^{\geq p}$ respects $D_c(X, R)$. The $(p, \mathcal{S})$**-perverse sheaves** over X are then defined to be the p-perverse sheaves in $D_c(X, R)$.

Proposition 1.7.4.12. *Let $\mathcal{T}$ be a stratification of X refining $\mathcal{S}$ and satisfying conditions (P2), (P3). Let p be a perversity over S and q a perversity over $\mathcal{T}$. Suppose that for any stratum S of $\mathcal{S}$ containing a stratum T of $\mathcal{T}$, we have*

$$p(S) \leq q(T) \leq p(S) + \dim(S) - \dim(T).$$

Then the t-structure of perversity q over $D_{\mathcal{T}}(X, R)$ induces the t-structure of perversity p over $D_{\mathcal{S}}(X, R)$.

Proof. It suffices to verify that $D_{\mathcal{S}}^{\leq p}(X, R) \subseteq D_{\mathcal{T}}^{\leq q}(X, R)$ and $D_{\mathcal{S}}^{\geq p}(X, R) \subseteq D_{\mathcal{T}}^{\geq q}(X, R)$. In fact, the inclusion $D_{\mathcal{S}}^{\leq p}(X, R) \subseteq D_{\mathcal{T}}^{\leq q}(X, R)$ implies $D_{\mathcal{T}}^{\geq q}(X, R) \cap D_{\mathcal{S}}(X, R) \subseteq D_{\mathcal{S}}^{\geq p}(X, R)$ since $\mathscr{F} \in D_{\mathcal{S}}^{\geq p}(X, R)$ if and only if $\operatorname{Hom}(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G}) = 0$ for any $\mathscr{G} \in D_{\mathcal{S}}^{<p}(X, R)$, and similarly for $D_{\mathcal{S}}^{\leq p}(X, R)$.

The first inclusion follows immediately from that fact that $p(S) \leq q(T)$ for $S \supseteq T$. To see the second one, let $\mathscr{F} \in D_{\mathcal{S}}^{\geq p}(X, R)$, $T \in \mathcal{T}$, and $S \in \mathcal{S}$ containing T. Let $i : T \to S$ and $j : S \to X$ be the inclusion maps. We have $(ji)^!(\mathscr{F}) = i^!j^!(\mathscr{F})$, and $H^n(j^!(\mathscr{F}))$ is locally constant over S, zero for $n < p(S)$. Let ω_T (resp. ω_S) be the orientation sheaf over T (resp. S), which is locally isomorphic to the constant sheaf $\mathbb{Z}$. Let $\omega = \mathcal{H}om(\omega_T, i^*\omega_S)$ be the sheaf of normal orientations of T in S, and put $d = \dim(S) - \dim(T)$. If $\mathscr{G}$ is a complex of sheaves over S, whose cohomology sheaves are locally constant, we then have $i^!(\mathscr{G}) \cong i^*(\mathscr{G}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \omega[-d]$. Put $\mathscr{G} = j^!(\mathscr{F})$, we see that $H^n(i^!j^!(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ for $n < p(S) + d$, and the assertion follows since $q(T) \leq p(S) + d$ by hypothesis. $\square$

Corollary 1.7.4.13. *Any $(p, \mathcal{S})$-perverse sheaf is $(q, \mathcal{T})$-perverse, and the inclusion functor $D_{\mathcal{S}}(X, R) \to D_{\mathcal{T}}(X, R)$ is t-exact. For any locally closed subset U which is a union of strata in $\mathcal{S}$, and $j : U \to X$ the inclusion map, the functors ${}^q j_!$, ${}^q j^!$, ${}^q j_*$, ${}^q j^*$, ${}^q j_{!*}$, restricted to the category of $(p, \mathcal{S})$-perverse sheaves, coincide with the functors ${}^p j_!$, ${}^p j^!$, ${}^p j_*$, ${}^p j^*$, ${}^p j_{!*}$.*

In addition to the situation of Proposition 1.7.4.12, suppose that R is a field and that X admits a (locally finite) triangulation such that each stratum S of $\mathcal{S}$ is a union of (open) simplices (for example, X is an algebraic variety endowed with a Whitney stratification). We can then apply Verdier's duality, which is an involutive automorphism of $D_c(X, R)$, and for $j : U \to X$ locally closed which is a union of strata, this automorphism exchanges $j_!$ and j_*, as well as $j^!$ and j^*.

For any stratum S with orientation sheaf ω_S, and of fimension d, the Verdier duality D over S (given by $\mathscr{F} \mapsto R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}, R \otimes \omega_S[d])$) satisfies for $\mathscr{F} \in D_{\mathcal{S}}(S, R)$ the equality

$$H^i(D(\mathscr{F})) = (H^{-d-i}(\mathscr{F}))^\vee \otimes \omega_S.$$

It is essential here that the cohomology sheaves of $\mathscr{F}$ are locally constant of finite rank, and that R is a field (a local Artinian ring, for example $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}$, will sill do the trick, because we have an injective dualizing module I ($\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}$ in this case), and the Verdier duality is then given by $\mathscr{F} \mapsto R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}, Rf^!(I))$, where f is the projection to pt.)

We define the **dual perversity** p^* of a perversity p to be

$$p^*(S) = -p(S) - \dim(S).$$

The preceding arguments imply that D exchanges $D^{\geq p}$ and $D^{\leq p^*}$ (and thus $D^{\leq p}$ with $D^{\geq p^*}$, since we have $p = p^{**}$). It in particular exchanges p-perverse sheaves and p^*-perverse sheaves, and ${}^{p^*}H^i$ and ${}^pH^{-i}$. For $j : U \to X$ the inclusion of a locally closed subset which is a union of strata, the functor D also exchanges ${}^pj_!$ and ${}^{p^*}j_*$, ${}^pj^!$ and ${}^{p^*}j^*$, and ${}^pj_{!*}$ and ${}^{p^*}j_{!*}$.

In the category $D_c(X, R)$, the condition defining the p-perversity can then be rewritten as follows: for any stratum $j : S \to X$, we have $H^i(j^*(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ for $i > p(S)$ and $H^i(j^*(D(\mathscr{F}))) = 0$ for $i > p^*(S)$. If every stratum of $\mathcal{S}$ is of even dimension, then there exists a **self-dual perversity** $p_{1/2}$, given by

$$p_{1/2}(S) = -\frac{1}{2}\dim(S).$$

A $p_{1/2}$-perverse sheaf over X is also called a **self-dual perverse sheaf**.

Proposition 1.7.4.14. *Under the hypothesis above, assume that every stratum of $\mathcal{S}$ is of even dimension and consider the self-dual perversity $p_{1/2}$. If $j : U \to X$ is an open subset of X which is a union of strata and $\mathscr{A}$ is a $p_{1/2}$-perverse sheaf over U, then $j_{!*}(\mathscr{A})$ is the unique self-dual prolongation $\mathscr{P}$ of $\mathscr{A}$ (in $D_c(X, R)$) such that for any stratum $S \subseteq X - U$, the restriction of $H^i(\mathscr{P})$ to S is zero for $i \geq -\frac{1}{2}\dim(S)$.*

Proof. That $j_{!*}(\mathscr{A})$ is self-dual follows from the self-duality of $\mathscr{A}$ and that of $j_{!*}$. This being the case, the proposition then follows from Proposition 1.7.4.8. □

Remark 1.7.4.15. If U is orientable and smooth with pure dimension d, we can choose $\mathscr{A}$ to be the constant sheaf R, placed at degree $-d/2$. For this choice, the self-dual perverse sheaf $j_{!*}(\mathscr{A})$ is the "intersection complex" of X, denoted by IC_X.

Let $(X, \mathcal{S}, \mathscr{O}_X)$ be as in the begining of this subsection, $\mathscr{O}_X^{\mathrm{op}}$ be the sheaf of opposite rings of $\mathscr{O}_X$, and p, q be two perversities.

Proposition 1.7.4.16. *The functor $\otimes^L$ sends $D^{\leq p} \times D^{\leq q}$ into $D^{\leq p+q}$, and $R\mathcal{H}om$ sends $D^{\leq p} \times D^{\geq q}$ into $D^{\geq (q-p)}$.*

Proof. The first assertion is clear by definition, since $\otimes^L$ is compatible with restrictions. Let $\mathscr{F} \in D^{\leq p}$ and $\mathscr{G} \in D^{\geq q}$. A dévissage argument shows that we can suppose that $\mathscr{F}$ is of the form $j_!(\mathscr{A})[-n]$, where $\mathscr{A}$ is a sheaf over a stratum S, $j : S \to X$ is the inclusion, and $n \leq p(S)$. By adjunction, we then have

$$R\mathcal{H}om(j_!(\mathscr{A})[-n], \mathscr{G}) = j_*R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{A}[-n], j^!(\mathscr{G})).$$

By hypothesis, we have $j^!(\mathscr{G}) \in D^{\geq q(S)}(S, \mathscr{O}_S)$, so

$$R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{A}[-n], j^!(\mathscr{G})) \in D^{\geq q(S)-n}(S, \mathbb{Z}) \subseteq D^{\geq q(S)-p(S)}(S, \mathbb{Z}).$$

The left t-exactness of j_* then implies that $R\mathcal{H}om(j_!(\mathscr{A})[-n], \mathscr{G})$ is in $D^{\geq q-p}$. □

Corollary 1.7.4.17. *For $\mathscr{F} \in D^{\leq p}(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$ and $\mathscr{G} \in D^{\geq p}(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$, we have $H^iR\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G}) = 0$ for $i < 0$.*

Proof. This follows from Proposition 1.7.4.16 by setting $p = q$. Alternatively, it can be deduced by localizing that $\mathrm{Hom}(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G}[i]) = 0$ for $i < 0$ (Corollary 1.7.4.4). □

Corollary 1.7.4.18. *For $\mathscr{F} \in D^{\leq p}(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$ and $\mathscr{G} \in D^{\geq p}(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$, the presheaf*

$$U \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{D(U, \mathscr{O}_U)}(\mathscr{F}|_U, \mathscr{G}|_U)$$

is a sheaf.

Proof. Since $H^i R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G}) = 0$ for $i < 0$, the Grothendieck spectral sequence of $R\mathcal{H}om$ and $\Gamma(U, -)$ implies that

$$\mathrm{Hom}_{D(U, \mathscr{O}_U)}(\mathscr{F}|_U, \mathscr{G}_U) = H^0(U, H^0 R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G})),$$

and this proves our claim. □

Endow each open subset U of X the stratification induced by $\mathcal{S}$, and the perversity induced by p. The restriction of a p-perverse sheaf over X to U is then a p-perverse sheaf over U. We thus get a functor $U \mapsto \mathrm{Perv}(U, \mathscr{O}_U, p)$ on the category of open subset of X.

Corollary 1.7.4.19. *The functor $U \mapsto \mathrm{Perv}(U, \mathscr{O}_U, p)$ is a stack.*

Proof. By Corollary 1.7.4.18, the functor $U \mapsto \mathrm{Perv}(U, \mathscr{O}_U, p)$ is a prestack over X. The glueing property for objects follows from ([?] 3.2.4), since Corollary 1.7.4.17 ensures that the hypotheses are satisfied. □

1.7.4.2 Complex algebraic varieties Now we want to apply the constructions of 1.7.4.1 to the space $X(\mathbb{C})$ of rational points of X, endowed with the usual analytic topology, where X is a separated scheme of finite type over $\mathbb{C}$. For this, we make the following assumptions.

- The perversity $p(S)$ only depends on the dimension of S. For this, we need a function $p : \mathbb{N} \to \mathbb{Z}$. Let $p^*(n) : -n - p(n)$, called the **dual perversity** of p. We assume that p and p^* are both decreasing: that is, for $n \leq m$, we have

$$0 \leq p(n) - p(m) \leq m - n.$$

- Recall that any (algebraic) stratification of X admits a Whitney refinement. We choose a Whitney stratification of equidimensional subvarieties of X, which satisfies conditions (P1), (P2) and (P3) of 1.7.4.1 (without further specifications, we therefore only consider Whitney stratifications of X). For any stratification $\mathcal{S}$, the perversity $p_{\mathcal{S}}$ of $\mathcal{S}$ is defined by

$$p_{\mathcal{S}}(S) = p(2 \dim_{\mathrm{alg}}(S)) = p(\dim_{\mathrm{top}}(S)).$$

  We write $\dim(S)$ for the algebraic dimension $\dim_{\mathrm{alg}}(S)$ of S.

Let R be a left Noetherian ring. We write $D_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ for the full subcategory of $D(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ formed by complexes $\mathscr{F}$ such that the cohomology sheaves $H^i(\mathscr{F})$ are constructible. The category $D^b_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R) = D^b(X(\mathbb{C}), R) \cap D_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ is the (filtered) union of subcategories $D^b_{\mathcal{S}}(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ of $D(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ (where $\mathcal{S}$ runs over Whitney stratifications of X), over which the perversity $p_{\mathcal{S}}$ defines a t-structure. By Proposition 1.7.4.12 and the hypothesis on p, these t-structures are compatible with refinements of stratifications, so we obtain a t-structure $(D^{b,\leq p}_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R), D^{b,\geq p}_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R))$ over $D^b_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$, called the ***t*-structure of perversity** p, by passing to limit with respect to $\mathcal{S}$. Mimiking the proof of Corollary 1.7.4.4, we can extend it into a t-structure over $D_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$[5].

Proposition 1.7.4.20. *For $\mathscr{F} \in D_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$, the following conditions are equivalent:*

(i) *$\mathscr{F}$ is in $D^{\leq p}_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ (resp. $D^{\geq p}_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$).*

(ii) *Any irreducible subvariety S' of X has an open dense Zariski subset S such that, if $i_S : S(\mathbb{C}) \to X(\mathbb{C})$ is the inclusion, we have $H^i(i_S^*(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ for $i > p(S)$ (resp. $H^i(i_S^!(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ for $i < p(S)$).*

If $\mathcal{T}$ is a finite covering family of smooth equidimensional locally closed subset (for the Zariski topology), such that for each $S \in \mathcal{T}$, the $H^i(i_S^*(\mathscr{F}))$ and $H^i(i_S^!(\mathscr{F}))$ are locally constant, then the above conditions are equivalent to

[5] Let $a \leq p(2i) \leq b$ be integers where $0 \leq i \leq \dim(X)$; we define $D^{\leq p}_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ (resp. $D^{\geq p}_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$) as the subcategory of $D_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ formed by complexes $\mathscr{F}$ such that $H^i(\mathscr{F}) = 0$ for $i > b$ (resp. $i < a$) and that $\tau^{[a,b]}\mathscr{F}$ is in $\mathcal{D}^{b,\leq p}_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ (resp. $D^{b,\geq p}_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$).

(iii) *For any* $S \in \mathcal{T}$, $H^i(i_S^*(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ *for* $i > p(S)$ *(resp.* $H^i(i_S^!(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ *for* $i < p(S)$*).*

Proof. We first suppose that $\mathscr{F}$ is bounded. For any stratification $\mathcal{S}$ fine enough, we then have $\mathscr{F} \in D^b_{\mathcal{S}}$. In particular, there exists a stratification $\mathcal{T}$ with the required properties, and it suffices to show that (i)⇒(ii)⇒(iii)⇒(i). The implication (ii)⇒(iii) is trivial; to verify (i)⇒(ii), it suffices to choose $\mathcal{S}$ fine enough so that $\mathscr{F}$ is in $D^b_{\mathcal{S}}$ (hence in $D^{b,\leq p}_{\mathcal{S}}$ (resp. $D^{b,\geq p}_{\mathcal{S}}$)) and that S' is a closure of strata. Finally, to see that (iii)⇒(i), let $\mathcal{S}$ be a refinement of $\mathcal{T}$ so that $\mathscr{F}$ is in $D^b_{\mathcal{S}}$. The hypothesis over p and the proof of Proposition 1.7.4.12 show that $\mathscr{F}$ is in $D^{b,\leq p}_{\mathcal{S}}$ (resp. $D^{b,\geq p}_{\mathcal{S}}$), whence (i).

In the general case, let a, b be integers such that $a \leq p(2i) \leq b$ for $0 \leq i \leq \dim(X)$. If in (i), (ii) or (iii) we replace $\mathscr{F}$ by $\tau^{\geq a}\mathscr{F}$ (resp. $\tau^{\leq b}\mathscr{F}$), we obtain an equivalent condition and it remains to show that each of them implies $H^i(\mathscr{F}) = 0$ for $i > b$ (resp. $i < a$). For (i), this is in the definition. For (iii), we start by replacing $\mathcal{T}$ by a finer stratification and recall the proof of Remark 1.7.4.2. For (ii), we prove by descendent induction on $\dim(S')$ that for each irreducible subvariety S' and each $i > b$ (resp. $i < a$), there exists an open dense subset S of S' such that $H^i(\mathscr{F})$ is zero over S. □

If U be a locally closed subset of X, for any stratification fine enough, U is a union of strata. This allows us to apply Proposition 1.7.4.6 to the inclusion map $j : U \to X$. We use the notations $\tau^{\leq p}$, H^p, ${}^p j_!$ and so on in 1.7.4.1, and the corresponding results. For U an open subset of X, with complement Z, the t-structure of perversity p of $D_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$ is obtained by glueing that of $D_c(U(\mathbb{C}), R)$ and $D_c(Z(\mathbb{C}), R)$. We can therefore apply Theorem 1.7.3.1, as in Proposition 1.7.4.8. In particular, for a perverse sheaf $\mathscr{A}$ over U, we have (Proposition 1.7.3.11)

$$j_{!*}(\mathscr{A}) = {}^p\tau_Z^{\leq -1} j_*(\mathscr{A}) \tag{1.7.4.4}$$

Suppose that Z is of dimension $\leq d$ and put $t = p(2d)$. Since $\tau^{<t} i^* j_*(\mathscr{A})$ is in ${}^pD_c^{<0}$ and that the triangle $(\tau^{<t} i^* j_*(\mathscr{A}), i^* j_*(\mathscr{A}), \tau^{\geq t} i^* j_*(\mathscr{A}))$ is distinguished, if $\tau^{\geq t} i^* j_*(\mathscr{A})$ is in ${}^pD_c^{\geq 0}$, we have ${}^p\tau^{<0} i^* j_*(\mathscr{A}) \cong \tau^{<t} i^* j_*(\mathscr{A})$ and hence ${}^p\tau^{<0} j_*(\mathscr{A}) \cong \tau_Z^{<t} j_*(\mathscr{A})$. In particular, we obtain the following:

Proposition 1.7.4.21. *If Z is smooth of dimension d and $H^i(j_*(\mathscr{A}))$ are locally constant over Z for $i \geq t := p(2d)$, we have*

$$j_{!*}(\mathscr{A}) = \tau_Z^{\leq t-1} j_*(\mathscr{A}). \tag{1.7.4.5}$$

Proof. By Proposition 1.7.4.20 (iii), applie to Z and $\mathcal{T} = \{Z\}$, we conclude that $\tau^{\geq t} i^* j_*(\mathscr{A})$ is in ${}^pD_c^{\geq 0}$, so the claim follows. □

This, together with the transitivity of $j_{!*}$, is analogous to Proposition 1.7.4.9. Similarly, under the same hypothesis over Z and if the $H^i(i^* j_*(\mathscr{A}))$ are locally free for $i \geq t-1$ (resp. $t+1$), we have respectively, by (Proposition 1.7.3.11),

$${}^p j_!(\mathscr{A}) = \tau_Z^{t-2} j_*(\mathscr{A}), \tag{1.7.4.6}$$

$${}^p j_*(\mathscr{A}) = \tau_Z^{\leq t}. \tag{1.7.4.7}$$

Proposition 1.7.4.22. *If $f : X \to Y$ is a quasi-finite morphism, the functors $f_!$ and f^* are right t-exact, and $f^!$ and f_* are left t-exact.*

Proof. We first note that for $\mathscr{F} \in D_c(X(\mathbb{C}), R)$, the condition $\mathscr{F} \in {}^pD_c^{\leq 0}$ is equivalent to

$$p(2\dim(\mathrm{supp}(H^i(\mathscr{F})))) \geq i \quad \text{for} \quad i \in \mathbb{Z}. \tag{1.7.4.8}$$

To see this, we fix $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ and choose a stratification $\mathcal{S}$ of X so that $Y = \mathrm{supp}(H^i(\mathscr{F}))$ is a union of strata of $\mathcal{S}$. If (1.7.4.8) is satisfied for i, then any stratum $S \in \mathcal{S}$ contained in Y would satisfy $p(S) \geq p(2\dim(Y)) \geq i$, so the condition $p(S) < i$ implies that $S \cap Y = \varnothing$ (by our choice of $\mathcal{S}$), i.e. $H^i(i_S^*(\mathscr{F})) = 0$. Conversely, if $\mathscr{F}$ is in ${}^pD_c^{\leq 0}$, then $p(S) \geq i$ for each stratum $S \in \mathcal{S}$ contained in Y, so $p(2\dim(Y)) \geq i$.

Now the functor ${}^0 f_!$ being exact, we have $H^i(f_!(\mathscr{F})) = {}^0 f_!(H^i(\mathscr{F}))$, whence

$$\dim(\mathrm{supp}(H^i(f_!(\mathscr{F})))) = \dim(\overline{f(\mathrm{supp}(H^i(\mathscr{F})))}) = \dim(\mathrm{supp}(H^i(\mathscr{F}))).$$

[5] Here $\tau_Z^{\leq n}$ is the truncation functor induced by the natural t-structures, and ${}^p\tau_Z^{\leq n}$ denotes that induced by the p-perverse t-structure.

Similarly, we have $H^i(f^*(\mathscr{F})) = {}^0 f^*(H^i(\mathscr{F}))$, $\mathrm{supp}(H^i(f^*(\mathscr{F}))) = f^{-1}(\mathrm{supp}(H^i(\mathscr{F})))$ and

$$\dim(\mathrm{supp}(H^i(f^*(\mathscr{F})))) \leq \dim(\mathrm{supp}(H^i(\mathscr{F}))).$$

These prove the right t-exactness of $f_!$ and f^*, and the assertion for $f^!$ and f_* follows from Proposition 1.7.2.17 (c). □

Corollary 1.7.4.23. *If f is finite (resp. étale), then $f_! = f_*$ (resp. $f^! = f^*$) is t-exact.*

For a quasi-finite morphism $f : X \to Y$ and a p-perverse sheaf $\mathscr{F}$ over X, by Proposition 1.7.4.22, $f_!(\mathscr{F})$ is in ${}^pD^{\leq 0}$ and $f_*(\mathscr{F})$ is in ${}^pD^{\geq 0}$. The natural morphism $f_!(\mathscr{F}) \to f_*(\mathscr{F})$ then admits a factorization

$$f_!(\mathscr{F}) \to {}^pf_!(\mathscr{F}) \to {}^pf_*(\mathscr{F}) \to f_*(\mathscr{F}), \tag{1.7.4.9}$$

and we denote by $f_{!*}(\mathscr{F})$ the image of ${}^pf_!(\mathscr{F})$ in ${}^pf_*(\mathscr{F})$.

As in 1.7.4.1, if two perversities p, q satisfy

$$(p+q)(n) - (p+q)(m) \leq m - n \quad \text{for} \quad m \leq n$$

then $\otimes^L$ sends $D_c^{-,\leq p} \times D_c^{-,\leq q}$ into $D_c^{\leq p+q}$, and if $q-p$ is decreasing, $R\mathcal{H}om$ sends $D_c^{-,\leq p} \times D_c^{+,\geq q}$ into $D_c^{+,\geq(q-p)}$. In particular, for $\mathscr{F} \in D_c^{\leq p}$ and $\mathscr{G} \in D_c^{\geq p}$, the chomology sheaves $H^i R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G})$ are zero for $i < 0$, and $U \mapsto \mathrm{Hom}_{D(U)}(\mathscr{F}|_U, \mathscr{G}|_U)$ is a sheaf. As in Corollary 1.7.4.19, the p-perverse sheaves form a stack.

If R is a field, the Verdier duality exchanges $D^{\geq p}$ and $D^{\leq p^*}$, $D^{\geq p}$ and $D^{\leq p^*}$, p-perverse sheaves and p^*-perverse sheaves, and ${}^pH^j$ and ${}^{p^*}H^{-j}$.

1.7.4.3 Algberaic variety over a field

Let X be a scheme of finite type over a field k, and let ℓ be a prime number, which is coprime to the characteristic of k. Over X, we consider the sheaves for the étale topology, but locally closed subsets refer to Zariski topology. Our goal is to define $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-perverse sheaves over X. The case of the sheaves of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}$-modules being a bit easier, we start with them.

Due to the phenomena of wild ramification, we do not have stratifications playing the role of Whitney stratifications. We thus consider pairs $(\mathcal{S}, L)$ where

- (S1) $\mathcal{S}$ is a finite partition of X by locally closed subsets (the strata). The closure of any stratum is a union of strata, and over $\bar{k}$ each stratrum is reduced and smooth, all of the same dimension.
- (S2) L associates to each stratum $\mathcal{S}$ a *finite* set $L(S)$ of isomorphism classes of locally constant sheaves of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}$-modules over S which are irreducible in the category of locally constant sheaves of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}$-modules.

A sheaf of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}$-modules is called $(\mathcal{S}, L)$**-constructible** if its restriction to any stratum S of $\mathcal{S}$ is locally constant and a (finite) iterated extension of sheaves whose isomorphism classes are in $L(S)$. We denote by $D^b_{\mathcal{S},L}(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$ the full subcategory of $D^b(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$ formed by $(\mathcal{S}, L)$-constructible complexes $\mathscr{F}$, i.e. such that the cohomology sheaves $H^i(\mathscr{F})$ are $(\mathcal{S}, L)$-constructible. We say that $(\mathcal{S}', L')$ **refines** $(\mathcal{S}, L)$ if each stratum $S \in \mathcal{S}$ is a union of strata of $\mathcal{S}'$, and that any $\mathscr{F} \in L(S)$ is $(\mathcal{S}', L')$-constructible (i.e. $(\mathcal{S}'|_S, L'|_{\mathcal{S}'|_S})$-constructible).

Finally, we impose the following condition:

(S3) For $S \in \mathcal{S}$ and $\mathscr{F} \in L(S)$. if $j : S \to X$ is the inclusion, the $R^n j_*(\mathscr{F})$ are $(\mathcal{S}, L)$-constructible.

As in 1.7.4.1, these conditions ensures that for $j : U \hookrightarrow V \subseteq X$ locally closed and unions of strata, the functors $j_*, j_!, j^*, j^!$ preserve the subcategories $D^b_{\mathcal{S},L}(U, \mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$ and $D^b_{\mathcal{S},L}(U, \mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$.

It follows from the constructability theorem for Rj_* ([**?**], VII) that for any system $(\mathcal{S}', L')$ verifying (S1)–(S2), there exists a refinement $(\mathcal{S}, L)$ of $(\mathcal{S}', L')$ which satisfies (S1)–(S3): if (S1)–(S3) are true with X replaced by the union of strata of dimension $\geq n$, the constructability theorem makes it possible to refine $(\mathcal{S}, L)$ into $(\mathcal{S}', L')$ without touching the strata of dimension $\geq n$, and to make (S1)–(S3) true with X replaced by the union of strata of dimension $\geq n-1$. We can then iterate this construction to obtain the desired refinement.

Let $p : \mathcal{S} \to \mathbb{Z}$ be as 1.7.4.2, defined by a perversity functor $p_{\mathcal{S}} : \mathcal{S} \to \mathbb{Z}, S \mapsto p(2\dim(S))$. By a similar argument as in 1.7.4.2, we obtain a t-structure over $D_{\mathcal{S},L}(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$, which is compatible under refinements: the purity theorem ([**?**], XVI, 3.7) provides an analogue of Proposition 1.7.4.12. By passing to limit, we obtain a t-structure $(D_c^{b,\leq p}(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}), D_c^{b,\geq p}(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}))$ over the filterred union $D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$ of the $D^b_{\mathcal{S},L}(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$. We then deruce a t-stucture over $D_c(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$ as in Corollary 1.7.4.4, and Proposition 1.7.4.20 to Corollary 1.7.4.23 are still valid, with similar arguments (the Verdier duality is replaced by the duality formalism of etale cohomology ([**?**], XVIII)).

For a point x of X (closed or not), if $i_x : \{x\} \to X$ denotes the inclusion map, which factors into

$$i_x : \{x\} \xrightarrow{j} \overline{\{x\}} \xrightarrow{i} X,$$

we define $i_x^! := j^* i^!$. With this notation, the characterization of Proposition 1.7.4.20 (ii) of $D_c^{\leq p}$ (resp. $D_c^{\geq p}$) admits the following formulation[6]:

(ii′) For any point x of X (closed or not), denote by $\dim(x)$ the dimension of $\overline{\{x\}}$, we have $H^i(i_x^*(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ for $i > p(2\dim(x))$ (resp. $H^i(i_x^!(\mathscr{F})) = 0$ for $i < p(2\dim(x))$).

As for the sheaves of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}$-modules (or more generally R-modules, with R finite over $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}$), we have similar definitions. It is convenient to continue to take for L the datum, for each stratum, of a finite family of locally constant irreducible sheaves of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}$-modules, and to say that $\mathscr{F} \in D^b(X,R)$ is $(\mathcal{S},L)$-constructible if $\ell^i H^*(\mathscr{F})/\ell^{i+1}H^*(\mathscr{F})$ are $(\mathcal{S},L)$-constructible (as sheaves of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}$-modules).

For $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves (resp. $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-sheaves), we preceed with the same definition, once we can define triangulated categories $D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ (resp. $D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Q}_\ell)$) obeying the usual variance formalism, and once we define their "natural" t-structures, through which we can consider the abelian category of constructible $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves (resp. $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-sheaves) on X ([**?**], VII, 1.1). In the case of finite fields or algebraically closed fields (or more generally if for any finite extension k' of k the groups $H^i(\mathrm{Gal}(\bar{k}/k'),\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$ are finite), a solution is proposed in [**?**] 1.1.2, also see [**?**]: we define

$$D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell) := 2\text{-}\varinjlim D^b_{\mathrm{ctf}}(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z})$$

(ctf for "constructible with finite Tor-dimension"). The transition functors are chosen to be the functors of extension of scalars[7]. The following proposition, together with the theorem of finiteness in (([**?**], VII)), assure that we obtain a triangulated category.

Proposition 1.7.4.24. *Let $(\mathcal{D}_n)_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ be a projective system of triangulated categories whose transition functors $T_{m,n} : \mathcal{D}_n \to \mathcal{D}_m$ are exact. If for any n and $K, L \in \mathcal{D}_n$,* $\mathrm{Hom}(K,L)$ *is finite, then the* 2*-projective limit $\mathcal{D}$ of $\mathcal{D}_n$, endowed with the triangles whose image in each $\mathcal{D}_n$ are distinguished, is triangulated.*

The above definition of $D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ has the advantage that the "six-functor formalism" of $D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ is obtained by passing to limit. The definition of the natural t-structure is more delicate, because the usual truncation functors $\tau^{\leq i}$ in $D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z})$ do not respect finite Tor-dimension and do not commute with extensions of scalars. We define the functor H^i of $D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ in the abelian category of constructible $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves by attaching to $\mathscr{F}$, defined by a system $\mathscr{F}_n \in D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z})$, the projective limit of the $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaf $H^i(\mathscr{F}_n)$. We shall write $\mathscr{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_\ell} \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}$ for $\mathscr{F}_n$, and we have the usual exact sequences

$$0 \longrightarrow H^i(\mathscr{F}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_\ell} \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow H^i(\mathscr{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_\ell} \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Tor}_1(H^{i+1}(\mathscr{F}),\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.7.4.10}$$

As n varies, these form a projective system, and the projective limit of Tor_1 is essentially zero. We define $D_c^{b,\leq 0}(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ (resp. $D_c^{b,\geq 0}(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$) by the condition $H^i(\mathscr{F}) = 0$ for $i > 0$ (resp. $i < 0$). For that we obtain a t-structure, it is essential to construct the operators $\tau^{\leq i}$, and this is done in ([**?**], 1.1.2). The functor H^0 induces an equivalenct of categories from $D_c^{b,\leq 0}(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell) \cap D_c^{b,\geq 0}(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ to the category of constructible $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves. The exact sequence (1.7.4.10) shows that for $\mathscr{F}$ to be in $D_c^{b,\leq 0}(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$, it is necessary and sufficient that for an (any) integer n, $\mathscr{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_\ell} \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}$ is in $D^{b,\leq 0}(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z})$.

Let $D^b_{\mathcal{S},L}(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ be the full subcategory of $D_c^b(X,\mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ formed by complexes $\mathscr{F}$ verifying the following conditions (the equivalence follows from (1.7.4.10)):

(a) for an (or any) integer n, $\mathscr{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_\ell} \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}$ is in $D^b_{\mathcal{S},L}(X,\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z})$;

(b) the $H^i(\mathscr{F}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_\ell} \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}$ are $(\mathcal{S},L)$-constructible.

[6] This formulation leads to an extension of the construction of t-structures associated to perversity functions, avioding constructibility and the use of stratifications, see [Gab04].

[7] The restriction of having finite Tor-dimension is necessary for them to send D^b into D^b.

As $(\mathcal{S}, L)$ varies, D_c^b is the filtered union of $D_{\mathcal{S},L}^b$, and we define the p-perverse t-structure by passing to limit over $(\mathcal{S}, L)$. Again, for $\mathscr{F}$ to be in $D_c^{\leq p}(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)$, it is necessary and sufficient that mod ℓ it is in $D_c^{\leq p}(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$.

We recall that by definition, $D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Q}_\ell) := D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Z}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}_\ell} \mathbb{Q}_\ell$, and that the abelian category of constructible $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-sheaves is induced by constructible $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves via tensoring with $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$. The full subcategory $D_{\mathcal{S},L}^b(X, \mathbb{Q}_\ell)$ (which is the image of $D_{\mathcal{S},L}^b(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_\ell$) is formed by the complexes $\mathscr{F}$ such that each $H^i(\mathscr{F})$ is tensoring with $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$ of an $(\mathcal{S}, L)$-constructible, i.e. its mod ℓ reduction is $(\mathcal{S}, L)$-constructible. We define the p-perverse structure over $D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Q}_\ell)$ by passing to limit over $(\mathcal{S}, L)$ and glueing. For any interval $[a, b]$ of $\mathbb{Z}$, the natural functor

$$ {}^pD_c{}^{[a,b]}(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_\ell \to {}^pD_c^{[a,b]}(X, \mathbb{Q}_\ell) $$

is an equivalence. In particular (for $a = b = 0$), the abelian category of perverse $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-sheaves is induced from that of $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$ by tensoring with $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$.

Let E_λ be a finite extension of $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$ and $\mathfrak{O}_\lambda$ be its valuation ring. We can then define $\mathfrak{O}_\lambda$-sheaves as we have done for $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves, and pass to E_λ-sheaves by tensoring with E_λ. We can also pass from $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-sheaves to E_λ-sheaves by observing that the forgetting functor induces an equivalence from $D_c^b(X, E_\lambda)$ to the category of objects K of $D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Q}_\ell)$ endowed with a morphism $E_\lambda \to \operatorname{End}(K)$ of $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-algebras: the fully faithfulness follows from the spectral sequence

$$ E_2^{p,q} = \operatorname{Ext}^p_{E_\lambda \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_\ell} E_\lambda}(E_\lambda, \operatorname{Hom}^q(K, L)) \Rightarrow \operatorname{Hom}^{p+q}(K, L), \tag{1.7.4.11} $$

where $E_2^{p,q} = 0$ if $p \neq 0$ (the Hom^q are in $D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Q}_\ell)$). The essentially surjectivity follows from the fact that K, endowed with an action of E_λ, is a direct factor of $K \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_\ell} E_\lambda$.

The spectral sequence (1.7.4.11) induces an analogous spectral sequence for $D_c^b(X, \mathfrak{O}_\lambda)$, obtained by passing to limit. If $\mathfrak{O}_\lambda$ is étale over $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$, we still have $E_2^{p,q} = 0$ for $p \neq 0$, but not in general. Similarly, this spectral sequence shows that the forgetful functor induces a fully faithful functor from the category of $\mathfrak{O}_\lambda$-perverse sheaves to that of $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-perverse sheaves endowed with an action of $\mathfrak{O}_\lambda$.

Finally, we define the triangulated category $D_c^b(X, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ by passing to limit over $E_\lambda \subseteq \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$. The results Proposition 1.7.4.20 to Corollary 1.7.4.23 continue to hold in this context, with essentially the same proof.

Remark 1.7.4.25. The proof of Corollary 1.7.4.19 (which states that the perverse sheaves form a stack) no longer applies as $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves and $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-sheaves because it was written assuming that one is working inside of a derived category of a category of sheaves. Here is another proof. We already know, as in Corollary 1.7.4.18, that the morphisms glue together, and it is a question of proving that if $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ is an étale covering of X, any family $\mathscr{A}_i$ of perverse sheaves endowed with a glueing datum, provides a perverse sheaf $\mathscr{A}$ over X. The given glueing datum permits us to define, for each étale morphism $j : V \to X$ which factors through one of the U_i, a perverse sheaf $\mathscr{A}_V$ over V, and these are compatible with inverse images $V' \to V$.

We also note that for any morphism $f : Y \to X$ and any irreducible subvariety $i : S' \to X$ of X, which give rise to a Cartesian diagram

$$ \begin{tikzcd} T' \arrow[r, hook, "i"] \arrow[d, "f"] & Y \arrow[d, "f"] \\ S' \arrow[r, hook, "i"] & X \end{tikzcd} $$

we have $i^! f_* = f_* i^!$ as functors over derived categories. If f is quasi-finite, S' admits an open dense subset S such that $T = f^{-1}(S)$ is finite over S, and is empty or purely of dimension $\dim(S)$. It then follows that f_* sends $D_c^{\geq p}(Y, \mathbb{Q}_\ell)$ into $D_c^{\geq p}(X, \mathbb{Q}_\ell)$, and ${}^pf_* := H^0 f_* \varepsilon$ is a left exact functor from perverse sheaves over Y to perverse sheaves of X, whose left adjoint is ${}^pf^* := H^0 f^* \varepsilon$ (notations in Proposition 1.7.2.17).

Let h_i (resp. h_{ij}) be the covering morphism from U_i to X (resp. $U_{ij} = U_i \times_X U_j$) into X. Put

$$ \mathscr{A} := \ker \left(\prod_i {}^p h_{i,*}(\mathscr{A}_{U_i}) \rightrightarrows \prod_{i,j} {}^p h_{ij}(\mathscr{A}_{U_{ij}}) \right). $$

It suffices to show that the morphism ${}^p h_i^*(\mathscr{A}) \to \mathscr{A}_i = \mathscr{A}_{U_i}$ induced from $\mathscr{A} \to h_{i,*}(\mathscr{A}_{U_i})$ by adjunction is an isomorphism, which can be verified under a base change by any of the h_i. The direct images and inverse images commutes with such a localization, so we are reduced to the case where $U_i \to X$ admits a section. In this case, the $\mathscr{A}_i$ is the inverse image of an $\mathscr{A}_X$, and that $\mathscr{A} = \mathscr{A}_X$ follows from the usual homotopy argument which shows that two open covers which are refinements of each other give the same Čech cohomology.

1.8 The self-dual perversity: geometric properties

In this section, except **??** concerning vanishing cycles, we only consider schemes separated of finite type over a field k and the self-dual perversity $p_{1/2}$. We will work in the category $D_c^b(X) := D_c^b(X, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ (defined in 1.7.4.3); for this to be well-defined, we may hence assume that for any finite extension k' of k, the $H^i(\mathrm{Gal}(\bar{k}/k'), \mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z})$ is finite (for example k is finite or algebraically closed). However, most of our results are also valid for $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$, $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$, or even $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n\mathbb{Z}$, and in particular for $\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}$-cohomology.

We also recall that (1.7.4.3) for the self-dual perversity (defined by $S \mapsto -\dim(S)$), the perverse t-structure of $D_c^b(X, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ have the following characterization: for any point x of X, put $\dim(x) = \dim(\overline{\{x\}}) = \deg(\kappa(x)/k)$ and let $i_x : \{x\} \to X$ be the inclusion, we have

$$\mathscr{K} \in {}^pD_c^{\leq 0} \Leftrightarrow H^i(i_x^* \mathscr{K}) = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad i > -\dim(x), \tag{1.8.0.1}$$

$$\mathscr{K} \in {}^pD_c^{\geq 0} \Leftrightarrow H^i(i_x^! \mathscr{K}) = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad i < -\dim(x). \tag{1.8.0.2}$$

In view of the proof of Proposition 1.7.4.22, condition (1.8.0.1) is also equivalent to that, for any i, we have

$$\dim(\mathrm{supp}(H^i(\mathscr{K}))) \leq -i. \tag{1.8.0.3}$$

(whence in particular $H^i(\mathscr{K}) = 0$ for $i > 0$). From this, we can easily give examples of perverse sheaves over X (for example, $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell[n]$ with $n = \dim(X)$, or more generally a locally constant sheaf placed at degree $-n$). Finally, since the self-dual perversity is self-dual, the Verdier duality D exchanges ${}^pD_c^{\geq 0}$ and ${}^pD_c^{\leq 0}$. It therefore induces an anti-equivalence of the category of perverse sheaves over X.

1.8.1 Affine morphisms

We first consider an affine morphism $f : X \to Y$ between schemes of finite type over k. The following theorem reformulate the theorem of ([**?**] XIV 3.1) about cohomological dimension of Rf_*:

Theorem 1.8.1.1. *If $f : X \to Y$ is an affine morphism, the functor $Rf_* : D_c^b(X) \to D_c^b(Y)$ is right t-exact.*

Proof. We are easily reduced to prove the analogous result for $\mathbb{Z}/\ell\mathbb{Z}$-cohomology. If $\mathscr{F}$ is a consructible sheaf, we define an integer $d(\mathscr{F})$ by

$$d(\mathscr{F}) = \sup\{\dim(x) : x \in X \text{ and } \mathscr{F}_x \neq 0\}.$$

In view of (1.8.0.1), this is the smallest integer such that $\mathscr{F}$ is in ${}^pD_c^{\leq d}(X)$: in fact, $\mathscr{F} \in {}^pD_c^{\leq d}$ if and only if for any $x \in X$, we have $H^{i-d}(\mathscr{F}_x) = 0$ for $i - d > -\dim(x)$, or equivalently $\mathscr{F}_x = 0$ for $\dim(x) < d$. Since a complex $\mathscr{K}$ is in ${}^pD_c^{\leq 0}(X)$ if and only if $H^i(\mathscr{K})[-i]$ is so for each i, the integer $d(\mathscr{K}) := \sup(i + d(H^i(\mathscr{K})))$ is then the smallest integer such that $\mathscr{K}$ is in ${}^pD_c^{\leq d}$. To prove that Rf_* sends ${}^pD_c^{\leq 0}(X)$ into ${}^pD_c^{\leq 0}(Y)$, it then suffices to verify that for any sheaf $\mathscr{F}$ with $d(\mathscr{F}) \leq d$, we have $d(R^i f_*(\mathscr{F})) \leq d - i$, which is exactly the statement of ([**?**] XIV 3.1). □

By applying the Verdier duality, Theorem 1.8.1.1 has the following dual form:

Corollary 1.8.1.2. *Under the same hypothesis, $Rf_!$ is left t-exact.*

We denote by ${}^pf_*$ and ${}^pf_!$ the functors ${}^pH^0 Rf_*$ and ${}^pH^0 Rf_!$ from the category of perverse sheaves over X to that of perverse sheaves over Y. The first one is right exact, and the second one left exact. For the composition fg of two affine morphisms, we have

$${}^p(fg)_* = {}^pf_* {}^pg_*, \quad {}^p(fg)_! = {}^pf_! {}^pg_!.$$

We onften write f_* and $f_!$ instead of Rf_* and $Rf_!$.

Corollary 1.8.1.3. *If $f : X \to Y$ is quasi-finite and affine, the functors $f_!$ and f_* are t-exact.*

Proof. In fact, $f_* := Rf_*$ is left t-exact by Proposition 1.7.4.22, and right t-exact by Theorem 1.8.1.1. The case for $f_!$ is dual. □

Suppose that k is algebraically closed. For $Y = \mathrm{Spec}(k)$, Theorem 1.8.1.1 then implies that $\mathrm{c.dim}(X) < \dim(X)$ for any affine scheme X over k. More generally, we have the following:

Corollary 1.8.1.4. *Suppose that k is algebraically closed. If $\mathscr{K}$ is in ${}^pD_c^{\leq 0}(X)$ and $u : Z \to X$ is a quasi-finite morphism with affine source, we have $H^i(Z, u^*(\mathscr{K})) = 0$ for $i > 0$.*

Proof. In fact, $u^*\mathscr{K}$ is in ${}^pD_c^{\leq 0}(Z)$ (analogue of Proposition 1.7.4.22), and we can apply Theorem 1.8.1.1 to the projection $Z \to \mathrm{Spec}(k)$. □

In fact, this property characterizes complexes in ${}^pD_c^{\leq 0}(X)$, and we have the following converse of Corollary 1.8.1.4:

Corollary 1.8.1.5. *Suppose that k is algebraically closed, and let $\mathscr{K}$ be in $D_c^b(X)$. If for any Zariski open affine V of X, we have $H^i(V, \mathscr{K}) = 0$ for $i > 0$, then K is in ${}^pD_c^{\leq 0}(X)$.*

To prove this, we need the following lemma.

Lemma 1.8.1.6. *Let X be affine smooth irreducible over an algebraically closed k, of dimension $d \geq 1$, and $\mathscr{F}$ be a locally constant sheaf over X. If $\mathscr{F} \neq 0$, there exists an affine open U of X, of the form X_f (with $f \neq 0$ in $\Gamma(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$), such that $H^d(U, \mathscr{F}) \neq 0$.*

Proof. Let $f_1, \dots, f_d \in \Gamma(X, \mathscr{O}_X)$ be such that the subscheme S of X defined by the equations $f_i = 0$ is finite nonempty over k. If $\mathscr{F} \neq 0$, we have $H_S^{2d}(X, \mathscr{F}) \neq 0$ (by purity, since S has codimension d in X, cf. [?] XVI 3.7), and the exact sequence

$$H^{2d-1}(X - S, \mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow H_S^{2d}(X, \mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow H^{2d}(X, \mathscr{F})$$

then implies that $H^{2d-1}(X - S, \mathscr{F}) \neq 0$ (in fact, by Corollary 1.8.1.4, we have $H^{2d}(X, \mathscr{F}) = 0$ since $2d > d$). Cover $X - S$ by the opens $U_i := X_{f_i}$ and for any $I \subseteq \{1, 2, \dots, d\}$, put $U_I = \bigcap_{i \in I} U_i$. Then each U_I is affine, and in the Čech spectral sequence[8]

$$E_1^{p,q} = \bigoplus_{|I| = p+1} H^q(U_I, \mathscr{F}) \Rightarrow H^{p+q}(X - S, \mathscr{F}),$$

we have $E_1^{p,q} = 0$ for $q > d$ (as each U_I has dimension $\leq d$), and $E_1^{pq} =$ for $p > d - 1$ (since I has at most d elements). The term $E_1^{d-1,d}$ is then the only one which contributes to $H^{2d-1}(X - S, \mathscr{F})$, so it is nonzero, i.e. we have $H^d(X_{f_1 \cdots f_d}, \mathscr{F}) \neq 0$. □

Proof of Corollary 1.8.1.5. Let F_i $(0 \leq i \leq \dim(X))$ be an increasing sequence of closed subsets of X, with $F_{\dim(X)} = X$. Put $F_{-1} = \varnothing$, we suppose that the sequence (F_i) is chosen so that $W_i = F_i - F_{i-1}$ (with the reduced scheme structure) is smooth and purely of dimension i and that the $H^j(\mathscr{K})$ are locally constant over W_i. We now prove by descending induction on i that, over $U_i = X - F_{i-1}$, the complex $\mathscr{K}$ is in $D^{\leq -i}$ (for the natural t-structure).

□

Corollary 1.8.1.7. *Let $j : U \hookrightarrow X$ be a affine open immersion, and $i : Z \hookrightarrow X$ be its complement.*

(a) *If $\mathscr{G}$ is a perverse sheaf over U, $j_!(\mathscr{G})$ and $j_*(\mathscr{G})$ are perverse.*

(b) *If $\mathscr{F}$ is a perverse sheaf over X, $i^*(\mathscr{F})$ is in ${}^pD_c^{[-1,0]}$, and $i^!(\mathscr{F})$ is in ${}^pD_c^{[0,1]}$, and we have the following exact sequence of perverse sheaves:*

$$0 \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^{-1}i^*(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow j_!j^*(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow \mathscr{F} \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^0i^*(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.8.1.1}$$

$$0 \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^0i^!(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow \mathscr{F} \longrightarrow j_*j^*(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^1i^!(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.8.1.2}$$

[8] This is obtained by taking an injective resolution $\mathscr{F} \to \mathscr{I}$, and consider the double complex $\bigoplus_{|I|=p+1} \mathscr{I}^q(U_I)$.

Proof. The first assertion is a particular case of Corollary 1.8.1.3, since j is quasi-finite. The long exact sequences on perverse cohomology of the triangle $(j_!j^*(\mathscr{F}), \mathscr{F}, i_*i^*(\mathscr{F}))$ then gives (recall that since j is étale, the inverse image $j^*(\mathscr{F})$ is perverse, cf. Corollary 1.7.4.23)

$$0 \longrightarrow {}^pH^{-1}i_*i^*(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow j_!j^*(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow \mathscr{F} \longrightarrow {}^pH^0 i_*i^*(\mathscr{F}) \longrightarrow 0$$

Since ${}^pH^n i_*i^*(\mathscr{F}) = i_*{}^pH^n i^*(\mathscr{F})$ for any n, we then obtain (1.8.1.1), and the triviality of ${}^pH^n i_*i^*(\mathscr{F}) = i_*{}^pH^n i^*(\mathscr{F})$ for $n \neq -1, 0$. Since $i_* = i_!$ is exact, this then implies ${}^pH^n i^*(\mathscr{F}) = 0$ for $n \neq -1, 0$, i.e. $i^*(\mathscr{F}) \in {}^pD_c^{[-1,0]}$. Applying the same argument to the triangle $(i_*i^!(\mathscr{F}), \mathscr{F}, j_*j^*(\mathscr{F}))$, we then obtain the remaining claims in (b). $\square$

In (1.8.1.1), if $\mathscr{F}$ is of the form $j_*(\mathscr{G})$, we then obtain an exact sequence for the perverse cohomologies of $i^*j_*(\mathscr{G})$ (recall that $j^*j_* \cong 1$):

$$0 \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^{-1}i^*j_*(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow j_!(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow j_*(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^0 i^*j_*(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.8.1.3}$$

Similarly, if we apply (1.8.1.2) to $\mathscr{F} = j_!(\mathscr{G})$, we then obtain an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^0 i^!j_!(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow j_!(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow j_*(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^0 i^!j_!(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.8.1.4}$$

which, via the isomorphism of $i^*j_*(\mathscr{G}) \cong i^!j_!(\mathscr{G})[1]$ (cf. (1.7.3.8)), coincides with (1.8.1.4) (except that the arrow $j_*(\mathscr{G}) \to i_*{}^pH^0 i^*j_*(\mathscr{G})$ has changed a sign).

Corollary 1.8.1.8. *Under the hypothesis of Corollary 1.8.1.7, $i^*j_{!*}(\mathscr{G})[-1]$ and $i^!j_{!*}(\mathscr{G})[1]$ are perverse, and we have*

$$i^*j_{!*}(\mathscr{G})[-1] = {}^pH^{-1}i^*j_*(\mathscr{G}) = {}^pH^0 i^!j_!(\mathscr{G}), \tag{1.8.1.5}$$
$$i^!j_{!*}(\mathscr{G})[1] = {}^pH^0 i^*j_*(\mathscr{G}) = {}^pH^1 i^!j_!(\mathscr{G}). \tag{1.8.1.6}$$

Proof. Since j_* and $j_!$ are t-exact, the exact sequence (1.8.1.3) provides two short exact sequences

$$0 \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^{-1}i^*j_*(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow j_!(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow j_{!*}(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.8.1.7}$$

$$0 \longrightarrow j_{!*}(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow j_*(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow i_*{}^pH^0 i^*j_*(\mathscr{G}) \longrightarrow 0 \tag{1.8.1.8}$$

Applying i^* and $i^!$ to these sequences, and using $i^*j_! = i^!j_* = 0$, we then obtain (1.8.1.5) and (1.8.1.6), whence our claim. $\square$

1.8.2 Exactness and adjunction

If $T : \mathcal{D}_1 \to \mathcal{D}_2$ is an exact functor between triangulated categories endowed with t-structures, we say that T is of **cohomological amplitude** $[a, b]$ (with $-\infty \leq a \leq b \leq +\infty$) if $T(\mathcal{D}_1^{\leq 0}) \subseteq \mathcal{D}_2^{\leq b}$ (for $b \neq +\infty$) and $T(\mathcal{D}_1^{\geq 0}) \subseteq \mathcal{D}_2^{\geq a}$ (for $a \neq -\infty$), i.e. if $T[b]$ is right t-exact (for $b \neq +\infty$) and $T[a]$ is left t-exact (for $a \neq -\infty$). If T is of bounded cohomological amplitude, this amounts to saying that for A in $\mathcal{C}_1 = \mathcal{D}_1^{\leq 0} \cap \mathcal{D}_1^{\geq 0}$, we have $H^iT(A) = 0$ for $i \notin [a, b]$.

Let $f : X \to Y$ be a morphism between schemes separated of finite type over a field k. In this subsection, we give some estimations of the cohomological amplitude of various functors attached to f, between $D_c^b(X, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ and $D_c^b(Y, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$, with respect to the t-structure of self-dual perversity $p_{1/2}$.

Proposition 1.8.2.1. *If Y is covered by affine opens V such that each $f^{-1}(V)$ is covered by $d+1$ affine opens, then f_* is of cohomological amplitude $\leq d$, and $f_!$ is of cohomological amplitude $\geq d$.*

Proof. The two assertions are dual to each other under the Verdier duality. since it is local over Y, we can assume that Y is affine, so X is covered by $d+1$ affine opens. The assertion for f_* then follows from Theorem 1.8.1.1 and the Leray spectral sequence for an open covering. $\square$

Proposition 1.8.2.2. *If the dimension of the fibers of f are $\leq d$, we have the following estimations for the cohomological amplitude:*

$$\begin{aligned} f_! &: \leq d, & f^! &: \geq -d, \\ f^* &: \leq d, & f_* &: \geq -d. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. The Verdier duality exchanges the functors on each diagonal, and Proposition 1.7.2.17, applied to the adjoint functors $(f_![d], f^![-d])$ and $(f^*[d], f_*[-d])$, shows that the two assertions on the same row are equivalent. It then suffices to consider f^*, where the estimate follows from (1.8.0.1) and that, for any $x \in X$, we have $\dim(x) \leq \dim(f(x)) + d$[9]. $\square$

Applying Proposition 1.7.2.17 (c) to the adjoint functors $(f_![d], f^![-d])$ and $(f^*[d], f_*[-d])$, we then obtain the following adjunction between functors relating perverse sheaves over X and Y:

Corollary 1.8.2.3. *The pairs $({}^pH^d f_!, {}^pH^{-d} f^!)$ and $({}^pH^d f^*, {}^pH^{-d} f_*)$ are adjoint pairs.*

The following two cases are particularly useful for our applications:

(a) f is proper: $f_! = f_*$ is of cohomological amplitude $[-d, d]$.

(b) f smooth of relative dimension d: we have $f^! = f^*[2d](d)$, and $f^*[d] = f^![-d](-d)$ is therefore t-exact, giving rise to an adjoint triple $({}^pH^d f_!(d), {}^pH^d f^*, {}^pH^{-d} f_*)$.

Proposition 1.8.2.4. *If f is smooth of relative dimension d, with connected geometric fibers (and hence by definition nonempty), the t-exact functor $f^*[d]$ induces a fully faithful functor from* $\mathrm{Perv}(Y)$ *to* $\mathrm{Perv}(X)$.

Proof. IN the proof, the usual functor f_* for sheaves is denoted by ${}^0f_*$. For $\mathscr{K}$ and $\mathscr{L}$ in $D^b_c(Y, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$, we have, since f is smooth,

$$f^* R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L}) \xrightarrow{\sim} R\mathcal{H}om(f^*(\mathscr{K}), f^*(\mathscr{L})). \tag{1.8.2.1}$$

On the other hand, for any morphism f, we have

$$f^! R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L}) \xrightarrow{\sim} R\mathcal{H}om(f^*(\mathscr{K}), f^!(\mathscr{L})).$$

$\square$

1.9 The self-dual perversity: weights

In this section, we complete the geometric results of **??** by arithmetic tools. We consider schemes separated of finite type over a finite field, or over the algebraic closed of a finite field, and the self-dual pervertity $p_{1/2}$.

Let $p \neq \ell$ be a prime number, q be a power of p, $\mathbb{F}_q$ be a finite field with q elements, and $\mathbb{F}$ the algebraic closure of $\mathbb{F}_q$. As in ([**?**] 0.7), we use a subscript 0 for an object over $\mathbb{F}_q$ (a scheme or a sheaf), and removing this index indicates the extension of scalars from $\mathbb{F}_q$ to $\mathbb{F}$.

1.9.1 Reminders on the theory of weights

Let X_0 be a scheme of finite type over $\mathbb{F}_q$ and $\mathscr{F}_0$ be a $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$-sheaf over X_0. Over the algebraic closure $\mathbb{F}$, we have a Frobenius morphism $\mathrm{fr}_q : X \to X$ (the absolute Frobenius morphism of X) and a Frobenius correspondence $\mathrm{Fr}_q^* : \mathrm{fr}_q^*(\mathscr{F}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathscr{F}$. If $\mathscr{F}$ is represented by an étale scheme F over X, this corresponds to the inverse of the relative Frobenius morphism $\mathrm{Fr}_{F/X} : F \to F^{(q)} := \mathrm{Fr}_q^*(F) \to F$, as shown in the following diagram

$$\begin{tikzcd}
F \arrow[r, dashed, "\mathrm{Fr}_{F/X}"] \arrow[rr, bend left, "\mathrm{fr}_q"] \arrow[dr] & F^{(p/X)} = \mathrm{fr}_q^*(F) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & F \arrow[d] \\
 & X \arrow[r, "\mathrm{fr}_q"] & X
\end{tikzcd}$$

For each n, we put $\mathrm{fr}_{q^n} = (\mathrm{fr}_q)^n$, and denote by $\mathrm{Fr}_{q^n}^* : \mathrm{fr}_{q^n}^*(\mathscr{F}) \to \mathscr{F}$ the induced isomorphism by iteration. If X_1 is induced from X_0 by extension of scalars to $\mathbb{F}_{q^n}$, then we have $X_1 \otimes_{\mathbb{F}_{q^n}} \mathbb{F} = X$, and these morphisms are the Frobenius morphisms relative to X_1. We also note that the fixed points of fr_{q^n}

[9] To see this, by replacing X with $\overline{\{x\}}$ and Y with $\overline{\{y\}}$, we may assume that $d(x) = \dim(X)$ and $d(y) = \dim(Y)$. But then the assertion follows from **??**.

are exactly those of $x \in X(\mathbb{F})$ defined over $\mathbb{F}_{q^n}$. At each of these fixed points, $\mathrm{Fr}_{q^n}^*$ is an automorphism of $\mathscr{F}_x$.

Similarly, for any $\mathscr{K}_0$ in $D_c^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$, $\mathscr{K}$ is endowed with a Frobenius correspondence $\mathrm{Fr}_q^* : \mathrm{fr}_q^*(\mathscr{K}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathscr{K}$. In particular, a perverse sheaf $\mathscr{F}_0$ over X_0 gives by extension of scalars from $\mathbb{F}_q$ to $\mathbb{F}$ a perverse sheaf $\mathscr{F}$ over X, endowed with $\mathrm{Fr}_q^* : \mathrm{fr}_q^*(\mathscr{F}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathscr{F}$.

Proposition 1.9.1.1. *The functor $\mathscr{F}_0 \mapsto (\mathscr{F}, \mathrm{Fr}_q^*)$ from the category of perverse sheaves over X_0 into that of perverse sheaves over X endowed with an isomorphism $\mathrm{fr}_q^*(\mathscr{F}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathscr{F}$, is fully faithful. The essential image of this functor is stable by extensions and subquotients.*

Proof. Let $u : X_0 \to \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_q)$ be the projection, and Γ be the global section functor over $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_q)$. For $\mathscr{M}_0$ in $D_c^b(\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_q), \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$, the functor $R\Gamma$ gives rise to a spectral sequence (cf. **??**)

$$E_2^{p,q} = H^p(\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_q), H^q(\mathscr{M}_0)) = H^p(\mathrm{Gal}(\mathbb{F}/\mathbb{F}_q), H^q(\mathscr{M})) \Rightarrow H^{p+q}R\Gamma(\mathscr{M}_0). \tag{1.9.1.1}$$

Since $\mathrm{Gal}(\mathbb{F}/\mathbb{F}_q) = \widehat{\mathbb{Z}}$, topologically generated by the geometric Frobenius morphism Frob (the inverse of the arithmetic Frobenius morphism $\varphi : \mathbb{F} \to \mathbb{F}, x \mapsto x^q$), the considered Galois cohomology groups are zero for $p \neq 0, 1$ ([**?**] 4.3.7). For $p = 0$, we get the invariants of Frob, and for $p = 1$ the coinvariants; therefore (1.9.1.1) reduces to the following long exact sequence

$$\cdots \longrightarrow (H^i(\mathscr{M}))^{\mathrm{Frob}} \longrightarrow H^iR\Gamma(\mathscr{M}_0) \longrightarrow (H^{i-1}(\mathscr{M}))_{\mathrm{Frob}} \longrightarrow H^{i+1}(\mathscr{M})^{\mathrm{Frob}} \longrightarrow \cdots \tag{1.9.1.2}$$

Now taking $\mathscr{M}_0 = Ru_*R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0)$ and noting that

$$H^iR\Gamma Ru_*R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0) = H^i\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0),$$

we then obtain a long exact sequence

$$\cdots \longrightarrow (H^i\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L}))^{\mathrm{Frob}} \longrightarrow H^i\mathrm{RHom}^i(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0) \longrightarrow (H^{i-1}\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L}))_{\mathrm{Frob}} \longrightarrow \cdots \tag{1.9.1.3}$$

For $i = 0$, if $\mathscr{K}_0$ and $\mathscr{L}_0$ are perverse, the $H^i\mathrm{RHom}$ are zero for $i < 0$ (cf. Corollary 1.7.4.17), and we obtain an isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Hom}(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0) \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Hom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L})^{\mathrm{Frob}}.$$

□

Remark 1.9.1.2. We can show that for $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-perverse sheaves, the analogous functor is an equivalence of categories. For the coefficients $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$ or $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$, it is not essentially surjective. For example, if $X_0 = \mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_q)$ is a point, $\mathscr{F} = \mathbb{Q}_\ell$, and $\sigma : \mathrm{fr}_q^*(\mathbb{Q}_\ell) \to \mathbb{Q}_\ell$ is the multiplication by $b \in \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$, then $(\mathscr{F}, \sigma)$ is in the essential image of this functor if and only if b is a unit in $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$.

We now fix an embedding $\tau : \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell \to \mathbb{C}$. Recall ([**?**] 1.2.1) that a $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$-sheaf $\mathscr{F}_0$ over X_0 is called **punctually τ-pure of weight** w (with $w \in \mathbb{Z}$) if for any integer n and any any point $x \in X_0(\mathbb{F}_{q^n})$, the eigenvalues of the automorphism $\mathrm{Fr}_{q^n}^*$ of $\mathscr{F}_x$ is an algebraic number whose complex conjugates are all of absolute value $(q^n)^{w/2}$[10]. Recall ([**?**] 1.2.2) that $\mathscr{F}_0$ is called **mixed** if it admits a finite filtration whose successive quotients are punctually pure. The nonzero weights of these quotients are called the **pointwise weights** of $\mathscr{F}$.

We define the category $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ of **mixed complexes** as the subcategory of $D_c^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ formed by complexes $\mathscr{K}$ such that the cohomology sheaves $H^i(\mathscr{K})$ are mixed. By ([**?**] I 6.1), the triangulated subcategory $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ of $D_c^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ is stable under the usual operations (Rf_*, $Rf_!$, f^*, $f^!$, $\otimes$, $R\mathcal{H}om$, Verdier duality). We also have the stablity under $\tau_{\leq i}$ and $\tau^{\geq i}$, since mixednes is tested over cohomology sheaves. These operations are the only ones used to construct the ${}^p\tau_{\leq i}$ and ${}^p\tau_{\geq i}$, for p a perversity.

[10] The eigenvalues of Frobenius are naturally elements of $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$. While it can be shown that $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell \cong \mathbb{C}$, there is no natural isomorphism between them. However, since $\mathbb{Q} \subseteq \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$, it makes sense to request that the eigenvalues are algebraic numbers (i.e., their being algebraic is independent of the choice of an isomorphism $\tau : \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbb{C}$). Once a number is algebraic, the set of its algebraic conjugates is well defined independently of the choice of the isomorphism τ, and this renders meaningful the request on the absolute values. This is a strong request: $1 + \sqrt{2}$ and $1 - \sqrt{2}$ are algebraic conjugates; however, they have different absolute values.

Proposition 1.9.1.3. *The t-structure of perversity $p_{1/2}$ of $D_c^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ induces a t-structure over $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$, and any subquotient of a mixed perverse sheaf is mixed.*

Proof. The first assertion follows from the fact that D_m^b is stable under ${}^p\tau_{\leq i}$ and ${}^p\tau_{\geq i}$. It implies that the mixed perverse sheaves form a full abelian subcategory stable under kernel, cokernel and extensions of perverse sheaves. The second assertion follows from ([**?**] 5.1.4), the hypothesis of ([**?**] 5.1.3) being satisfied by the above observations. $\square$

In the sequel, we only consider mixed complexes. An object $\mathscr{K}$ in $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ is called **of weight** $\leq w$ if for each i, the pointwise weight of $H^i(\mathscr{K})$ is $\leq w + i$. We denote by $D_{\leq w}^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ the corresponding subcategory of $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$. By the dependence on i in this definition, we have

$$(D_{\leq w}^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell))[1] = D_{\leq w+1}^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$$

and in particular $D_{\leq w}^b[1] \supset D_{\leq w}^b$. We say that $\mathscr{K}$ is of **weight** $\geq w$ if its Verdier dual $D\mathscr{K}$ is of weight $\leq -w$, and we denote by $D_{\geq w}^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ the corresponding subcategory of $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$. We say that $\mathscr{K}$ is **pure of weight** w if it is of weight $\leq w$ and $\geq w$ (this should be distinguished from ponctually purity). If X_0 is smooth purely of dimension d, and the $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$-sheaves $H^i(\mathscr{K})$ are locally constant, we have $H^i(D\mathscr{K}) = (H^{-2d-i}(\mathscr{K}))^\vee(d)$, so $\mathscr{K}$ is pure of weight w if and only if each $H^i(\mathscr{K})$ is pure of weight $w + i$. From our definition, the following result is immediate:

Proposition 1.9.1.4. *Let $\mathscr{K}$ be an object of $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$. For that $\mathscr{K}$ is of weight $\leq w$, it is necessary and sufficient that for each closed point x_0 with inclusion $i : \{x_0\} \to X_0$, the sheaf $i^*(\mathscr{K})$ (resp. $i^!(\mathscr{K})$) is of weight $\leq w$ (resp. $\geq w$).*

The principal theorems of [**?**] ([**?**] 3.3.1, 6.2.3) is that, if $f : X_0 \to Y_0$ is a separated morphism between schemes of finite type over $\mathbb{F}_q$, the functor $Rf_!$ sends $D_{\leq w}^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ into $D_{\leq}^b(Y_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$. It is clear that f^* preserves $D_{\leq w}^b$, and that $\otimes$ sends $D_{\leq w}^b \times D_{\leq w'}^b$ into $D_{\leq w+w'}^b$. By applying duality, we then obtain the following table of stability (we write $f_!$, $f^!$ for $Rf_!$, $Rf^!$):

Proposition 1.9.1.5. *Let $f : X_0 \to Y_0$ be as above.*

(a) *$f_!$, f^* preserve $D_{\leq w}^b$;*

(b) *$f^!$, f_* preserve $D_{\geq w}^b$;*

(c) *$\otimes$ sends $D_{\leq w}^b \times D_{\leq w'}^b$ into $D_{\leq w+w'}^b$;*

(d) *$R\mathcal{H}om$ sends $D_{\leq w}^b \times D_{\leq w'}^b$ into $D_{\geq -w+w'}^b$;*

(e) *D exchanges $D_{\leq w}^b$ and $D_{\geq -w}^b$.*

Proposition 1.9.1.6. *Let $\mathscr{K}_0$ and $\mathscr{L}_0$ be in $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$. Suppose that $\mathscr{K}_0 \in D_{\leq w}^b$ and $\mathscr{L}_0 \in D_{>w}^b$ for some integer w, then*

(a) *$Ru_*R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0)$ is in $D_{>0}^b(\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_q))$.*

(b) *$H^i\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0) = 0$ for $i > 0$.*

For $\mathscr{K}_0$ in $D_{\leq w}^b$ and $\mathscr{L}_0$ in $D_{\geq w}^b$, hence $Ru_*R\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L}) \in D_{\geq 0}^b$, we still have

(c) *$H^i\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L})^{\mathrm{Frob}} = 0$ for $i > 0$. In particular, for $i > 0$, the following canonical morphism is zero:*

$$H^i\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0) \to H^i\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L}).$$

Proof. The first assertion follows from Proposition 1.9.1.5, and it implies that $H^i\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L})$ is of weight $> i$, hence of weight > 0, for $i \geq 0$. We then have

$$(H^i R\mathrm{Hom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L}))_{\mathrm{Frob}} = (H^i R\mathrm{Hom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L}))^{\mathrm{Frob}} = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad i \geq 0,$$

and the exact sequence (1.9.1.3) implies that $H^iR\mathrm{Hom}(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0) = 0$ for $i > 0$. A similar argument can be used to prove (c), noting that the image of $H^i\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{L}_0)$ in $H^i\mathrm{RHom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L})$ is contained in $H^iR\mathrm{Hom}(\mathscr{K}, \mathscr{L})^{\mathrm{Frob}}$. $\square$

1.9.2 A criterion of weights

Theorem 1.9.2.1. *For a mixed perverse sheaf $\mathscr{F}_0$ over X_0 to be of weights $\geq w$, it is necessary and sufficient that for any étale affine U over X_0, the $H^0(U, \mathscr{F})$*[11] *is of weight $\geq w$.*

1.9.3 The weight filtration

Proposition 1.9.3.1. *If a perverse sheaf $\mathscr{F}_0$ over X_0 is mixed of weights $\geq w$ (resp. $\leq w$), any subquotient of $\mathscr{F}_0$ is also mixed of weights $\geq w$ (resp. $\leq w$).*

Proof. We are easily reduced to the case where $w = 0$. Let $\mathscr{F}_0$ be of weights ≥ 0. If $\mathscr{G}_0$ is a quotient of $\mathscr{F}_0$ (say $\mathscr{G}_0 = \mathscr{F}_0/\mathscr{K}_0$), for any U_0 affine étale over X_0, the exact sequence

$$H^0(U, \mathscr{F}) \to H^0(U, \mathscr{G}) \to H^0(U, \mathscr{K})$$

shows that $H^0(U, \mathscr{G})$ is of weights ≥ 0, and we can apply Theorem 1.9.2.1. If $\mathscr{G}_0$ is a perverse subsheaf of $\mathscr{F}_0$, the exact sequence

$$H^{-1}(U, \mathscr{F}/\mathscr{G}) \to H^0(\mathscr{U}, \mathscr{G}) \to H^0(U, \mathscr{F})$$

shows that $\mathscr{G}_0$ is of weights ≥ -1. We can improve this estimate by passing to $X_0 \times X_0$: $\mathscr{G}_0 \boxtimes \mathscr{G}_0$ is a subsheaf of $\mathscr{F}_0 \boxtimes \mathscr{F}_0$, so it is of weights ≥ -1, and by ([?] 5.1.14.1*), $\mathscr{G}_0$ is therefore of weights $\geq -1/2$. The weights being integers, we conclude that it is of weights ≥ 0. Finally, the case for $\leq w$ can be obtained by duality. □

Corollary 1.9.3.2. *Let $j : U_0 \hookrightarrow X_0$ be an affine immersion*[12]*. If $\mathscr{F}_0$ is a mixed perverse sheaf of weights $\leq w$ (resp. $\geq w$) over U_0, the perverse sheaf $j_{!*}\mathscr{F}_0$ is still mixed of weights $\leq w$ (resp. $\geq w$). In particular, if $\mathscr{F}_0$ is pure, so is $j_{!*}\mathscr{F}_0$ with the same weight.*

Proof. Suppose that $\mathscr{F}_0$ is of weights $\leq w$. Since j is affine, $j_!\mathscr{F}_0$ is perverse by Corollary 1.8.1.3. It is of weights $\leq w$ by Proposition 1.9.1.5. By Proposition 1.9.3.1, the perverse sheaf $j_{!*}\mathscr{F}_0$ is of weights $\leq w$ as a quotient of $j_!\mathscr{F}_0$ (note that $j_!\mathscr{F}_0$ is also perverse, so there is no need to take perverse cohomology). This, together with the duality, proves the corollary. □

Corollary 1.9.3.3. *Any mixed simple perverse sheaf $\mathscr{F}_0$ is pure.*

Proof. There exists $j : U_0 \hookrightarrow X_0$ smooth connected of dimension d and a smooth sheaf $\mathscr{L}_0$ over U_0 such that $\mathscr{F}_0 = j_{!*}(\mathscr{L}_0[d])$ ([?] 4.3.1), and we can take U_0 to be affine by shrinking it. The smooth sheaf $\mathscr{L}_0$ being irreducible, it follows by definition that we can take it to be ponctually pure (or equivalently pure, since U_0 is smooth), and the assertion then follows from Corollary 1.9.3.2. □

Theorem 1.9.3.4. *A mixed perverse sheaf admits a unique finite decreasing filtration $\mathcal{W}$ (called the* ***weight filtration****) such that for each i, the quotient $\mathrm{gr}_i^{\mathcal{W}}(\mathscr{F}_0)$ is pure of weight i. Any morphism $f : \mathscr{F}_0 \to \mathscr{G}_0$ is strictly compatible with the weight filtrations of $\mathscr{F}_0$ and $\mathscr{G}_0$.*

Corollary 1.9.3.5. *For a mixed perverse sheaf $\mathscr{F}_0$ over X_0 to be of weights $\leq w$, it is necessary and sufficient that any irreducible subvariety Y_0 of X_0 (of dimension d) admits an open dense subset U_0 such that $H^{-d}(\mathscr{F}_0)|_{U_0}$ is of weights $\leq w - d$.*

Proof. This condition is clearly necessary. Conversely, we prove that it is sufficient. If $\mathscr{F}_0$ is not of weights $\leq w$, by Theorem 1.9.3.4, it admits a simple quotient $\mathscr{G}_0$ of weight $w_1 > w$. Let $j : Y_0 \hookrightarrow X_0$ be smooth connected of dimension d and $\mathscr{L}_0$ be a smooth sheaf over Y_0 such that $\mathscr{G}_0 \cong j_{!*}(\mathscr{L}_0[d])$ ([?] 4.3.1). We can choose $\mathscr{L}_0$ to be ponctually pure of weights $w_1 - d$ and Y_0 be affine. The long exact sequence of cohomology of the exact sequence

$$0 \to \ker(\mathscr{F}_0 \to \mathscr{G}_0) \to \mathscr{F}_0 \to \mathscr{G}_0 \to 0$$

then provides, over an open dense subset V_0 of Y_0, an epimorphism

$$H^{-d}(\mathscr{F}_0)|_{V_0} \twoheadrightarrow H^{-d}(\mathscr{G}_0)|_{V_0} = \mathscr{L}_0|_{V_0}.$$

The hypothesis ensures that for V_0 small enough, the weights of $H^{-d}(\mathscr{F}_0)|_{V_0}$ are $\leq w - d$, and the same then holds for $\mathscr{L}_0|_{V_0}$. This contradicts our assumption on $\mathscr{L}_0$. □

[11] For a sheaf $\mathscr{F}$ over X and any scheme Z over X, we write $H^i(Z, \mathscr{K})$ for the cohomology group $H^i(Z, \mathscr{K}|_Z)$.

[12] The affine assumption is superflous, cf. Corollary 1.9.4.3.

Theorem 1.9.3.6. *If $\mathscr{F}_0$ is a pure perverse sheaf over X_0, the perverse sheaf $\mathscr{F}$ over X is semi-simple, hence is a direct sum of simple perverse sheaves of the form $j_{!*}\mathscr{L}[d]$, where $j : U \hookrightarrow X$ is the inclusion of a smooth connected subvariety purely of dimension d and $\mathscr{L}$ is a smooth irreducible $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$-sheaf over U.*

Proof. The proof is proceed as ([**?**] 3.4.1 (iii)). Let $\mathscr{F}'$ be the sum of simple perverse subsheaves of $\mathscr{F}$. This is the largest semi-simple sub-object of $\mathscr{F}$, and it suffices to verify that $\mathscr{F}' = \mathscr{F}$. The subsheaf $\mathscr{F}'$ is clearly stable under Frobenius, so it comes from $\mathscr{F}_0' \subseteq \mathscr{F}_0$ (the essential image of $\mathscr{F}_0 \to (\mathscr{F}, \mathrm{fr}_q^*)$ is stable under subquotient, cf. Proposition 1.9.1.1). Let $\mathscr{F}_0'' = \mathscr{F}_0/\mathscr{F}_0'$. The class of the extension

$$0 \to \mathscr{F}_0' \to \mathscr{F}_0 \to \mathscr{F}_0'' \to 0$$

has zero image in $\mathrm{Ext}^1(\mathscr{F}'', \mathscr{F}')$ (Proposition 1.9.1.6 (c)), since $\mathscr{F}_0'$ and $\mathscr{F}_0''$ are pure of the same weight (Proposition 1.9.3.1); we then have $\mathscr{F} \cong \mathscr{F}' \oplus \mathscr{F}''$. If $\mathscr{F}''$ is nonzero, it then admits a simple subobject, which contradicts the maximality of $\mathscr{F}''$. Thus $\mathscr{F}'' = 0$ and we have $\mathscr{F}' = \mathscr{F}$. □

Let $\mathscr{E}_n$ be the $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$-sheaf over $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbb{F}_q)$ with fiber $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell^n$ (a basis given by $(e_i)_{1\leq i\leq n}$), over which the Frobenius Frob acts unipotently via a single Jordan block: $\mathrm{Frob}(e_n) = e_n$ and $\mathrm{Frob}(e_i) = e_i + e_{i+1}$ for $i < n$. This is an indecomposable pure sheaf of weight 0, and is not semi-simple if $n > 1$. We also denote by $\mathscr{E}_n$ its inverse image over X_0.

Proposition 1.9.3.7. (i) *The indecomposable pure perverse sheaves are of the form $\mathscr{S}_0 \otimes \mathscr{E}_n$, with $\mathscr{S}_0$ simple.*

(ii) *If $\mathscr{S}_0$ is simple, there exists $d > 0$ and $\mathscr{S}_1$ over $X_1 := X_0 \otimes \mathbb{F}_{q^d}$, of which $\mathscr{S}_0$ is the direct image under $\pi : X_1 \to X_0$, remaining simple over X, and not isomorphism to its conjugates under $\mathrm{Aut}(\mathbb{F}_{q^d}/\mathbb{F}_q)$.*

1.9.4 Pure complexes

Theorem 1.9.4.1. *For that $\mathscr{K}_0$ in $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ is of weights $\leq w$ (resp. $\geq w$), it is necessary and sufficient that each ${}^pH^i(\mathscr{K}_0)$ is of weights $\leq w + i$ (resp. $w \geq i$).*

Proof. If a triangle $(\mathscr{A}_0, \mathscr{B}_0, \mathscr{C}_0)$ is diatinguished and $\mathscr{A}_0, \mathscr{C}_0$ are of weights $\leq w$, then so is $\mathscr{C}_0$. Using the diatinguished triangle $({}^p\tau^{i-1}\mathscr{K}_0, {}^p\tau^{\leq i}\mathscr{K}_0, {}^pH^i(\mathscr{K}_0)[-i])$, it then follows that the condition in the theorem is sufficient.

Now suppose that $\mathscr{K}_0$ is of weights $\leq w$. We prove by descending induction over i that ${}^pH^i(\mathscr{K}_0)$ is of weights $\leq w + i$. For i large enough, the ${}^pH^i(\mathscr{K}_0)$ is zero, and the assertion is trivial. Suppose hence that ${}^pH^i(\mathscr{K}_0)$ is of weights $\leq w + i$ for $i > n$, so that the truncation ${}^p\tau^{>n}\mathscr{K}_0$ is of weight $\leq w$. We now prove that ${}^pH^n(\mathscr{K}_0)$ is of weights $\leq w + n$.

To simplify the notations, we suppose that $w = n = 0$; this can be done by twisting and shifts. The distinguished triangle $({}^p\tau^{\leq 0}\mathscr{K}_0, \mathscr{K}_0, {}^p\tau^{>0}\mathscr{K}_0)$ shows that ${}^p\tau^{\leq 0}\mathscr{K}_0$ is of weights ≤ 0, and the distinguished triangle $({}^p\tau^{<0}\mathscr{K}_0, {}^p\tau^{\leq 0}\mathscr{K}_0, {}^pH^0(\mathscr{K}_0))$ gives an exact sequence (for any $d \in \mathbb{Z}$)

$$H^{-d}({}^p\tau^{\leq 0}\mathscr{K}_0) \to H^{-d}({}^pH^0(\mathscr{K}_0)) \to H^{-d+1}({}^p\tau^{<0}\mathscr{K}_0). \tag{1.9.4.1}$$

For Y_0 an irreducible subvariety of dimension d of X_0, there exists an open dense subset U_0 of Y_0 such that the restriction of $H^{-d+1}({}^p\tau^{<0}\mathscr{K}_0)$ to U_0 is zero (cf. Eq. (1.8.0.3)). By Eq. (1.9.4.1), the ponctually weights of $H^{-d}({}^pH^0(\mathscr{K}_0))$ are $\leq -d$ over U_0, so it follows from Corollary 1.9.3.5 that ${}^pH^0(\mathscr{K}_0)$ is of weights ≤ 0. This completes the proof. □

Corollary 1.9.4.2. *If $f : X_0 \to Y_0$ is a morphism of finite type, the functors ${}^pf_!$ and ${}^pf^*$ (resp. ${}^pf_*$ and ${}^pf^!$) transform perverse sheaves of weights $\leq w$ (resp. $\geq w$) into perverse sheaves of weights $\leq w$ (resp. $\geq w$).*

Proof. This follows from Theorem 1.9.4.1 and Proposition 1.9.1.5. □

Corollary 1.9.4.3. *If $f : X_0 \to Y_0$ is quasi-finite, $f_{!*} = \mathrm{im}({}^pf_! \to {}^pf_*)$ transforms perverse sheaves of weight $\geq w$ (resp. $\leq w$) over X_0 into perverse sheaves of weights $\geq w$ (resp. $\leq w$) over Y_0, and in particular pure perverse sheaves into pure perverse sheaves of the same weight.*

Proof. Thanks to Corollary 1.9.4.2, the proof of Corollary 1.9.3.2 applies. □

Theorem 1.9.4.4. *If $\mathscr{K}_0$ in $D_m^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ is pure, then $\mathscr{K}$ has a direct sum decomposation over X:*

$$\mathscr{K} = \bigoplus_i {}^pH^i(\mathscr{K})[-i].$$

Proof. By Theorem 1.9.4.1 and Proposition 1.9.1.6 (c), the morphisms of the distinguished triangles $({}^p\tau^{<i}\mathscr{K}_0, {}^p\tau^{\leq i}\mathscr{K}_0, {}^pH^i(\mathscr{K}_0)[-1])$ have zero image in $\mathrm{Ext}^1({}^pH^i(\mathscr{K})[-i], {}^p\tau^{<i}\mathscr{K})$, so we have

$$ {}^p\tau^{\leq i}\mathscr{K} \cong {}^p\tau^{<i}\mathscr{K} \oplus {}^pH^i(\mathscr{K})[-i], $$

amd the theorem then follows by induction. □

Combing Theorem 1.9.4.1, Theorem 1.9.4.4 and Theorem 1.9.3.6, we then obtain the following result:

Corollary 1.9.4.5. *If $\mathscr{K}_0$ is pure, then $\mathscr{K}$ is a direct sum of $(j_{!*}\mathscr{L}[d])[n]$, where $j : U \to X$ is the inclusion of a smooth connected subvariety U of dimension d, $\mathscr{L}$ is smooth irreducible over U, and n is an integer.*